



## **RELIGIOUS EDUCATION: GLOSSARY OF TERMS**

The South Gloucestershire SACRE has prepared this glossary as a reference aid to the teaching of RE and the use of the new Agreed Syllabus. It may appear cumbersome as a result of our desire to make it as comprehensive as possible. The information contained here has been gathered from a variety of sources and we cannot accept responsibility for the content.

## CONTENTS

Baha'i	3 – 12
Buddhist	13 -24
Christian	25 – 37
Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints (Mormons)	38 – 58
Confucianism	59 – 69
Ethics	70 – 81
Hinduism	82 – 89
Humanism	90 – 92
Islam	93 – 103
Jain	104 - 116
Jehovah's Witnesses	117 - 124
Judaism	125 - 129
Pagan	130 - 137
Philosophy of Religion	138 - 142
Rastafarianism	143 - 149
Science and Religion	150 - 157
Shintoism	158 - 162
Sikhism	163 - 166
Taoism	167 - 168
Zoroastrianism	169 - 182

# GLOSSARY OF BAHÁ'Í TERMS

## Guide to Persian Names

In the time of the Báb and Bahá'u'lláh, Persians did not use family names. To help distinguish one Alí from another, they used a system of honorifics added to the names. Family names eventually came into widespread use, but many of these honorifics can still be added to a person's name.

Once they came into use, family names were frequently formed from place names. This was often done by adding an "í" to the end of the name of the town or region where the family lived. For example, a family from the city of Shiráz might have adopted a family name of Shirází. (The same construction used in forming words such as "Bábí" and "Bahá'í.")

Here's a list of honorifics and what they mean:

**Áqá:** A title of respect denoting the eldest son of a family; translated as "Master" in references to 'Abdu'l-Bahá.

**Effendi:** A title of respect; "sir". Can be used following a name or alone as a form of address.

**Hájí:** One who has made the pilgrimage to Mecca.

**Khánúm:** Placed after the name; "Lady".

**Mírzá:** Used in front of the name, it designates one who can read and write, and is roughly equivalent to "Mister." Used after the name, it designates a prince.

**Mullá:** A Muslim priest.

**Navváb:** A title of respect used by a man to refer to his wife; English "nabob" is a cognate.

**Shaykh:** A learned man, similar to a professor or other scholar.

**Siyid:** A descendant of the Prophet Muhammad.



**'Abdu'l-Bahá** (1844 - 1921): The name by which Bahá'u'lláh's son and appointed successor Abbas Effendi is commonly known. "Abdu'l-Bahá" means "Servant of Bahá." He was designated by Bahá'u'lláh as the "Centre of the Covenant" towards whom all Bahá'ís should turn, the authorised interpreter of His Father's Writings, and the perfect exemplar of Bahá'í life.

**Abhá:** Most glorious. "Bahá" means glory, and "abhá" is its superlative form. Both are titles of Bahá'u'lláh and of His Kingdom.

**Ablutions:** The ritual washing of the hands and face in preparation for prayer. Bahá'u'lláh requires ablutions as part of the daily obligatory prayer. See also: Obligatory Prayer

**Administrative Order:** Collectively, the institutions that administer the affairs of the Bahá'í Faith. The administrative order was created by Bahá'u'lláh, and certain of its elements were further elaborated by 'Abdu'l-Bahá, Shoghi Effendi, and the Universal House of Justice. See also: Auxiliary Board, Continental Board of Counsellors, Guardian, Hand of the Cause of God, House of Justice, Spiritual Assembly

**Afnán:** The relatives of the Báb. Literally, "twigs."

**Aghsán:** The relatives of Bahá'u'lláh. Literally, "branches."

**'Akká:** The prison-city near Haifa (in modern-day Israel) where Bahá'u'lláh was imprisoned from late August, 1868 through June, 1877. See also: Bahjí, Mazra'ih, Most Great Prison

**'Alá:** "Loftiness," the nineteenth month in the Bahá'í calendar. 'Alá is also the month during which the 19-day Fast is observed. See also: The Fast

**Alláh-u-Abhá:** A form of the Greatest Name, literally meaning "God, the All-Glorious." It is often used by Bahá'ís as a greeting. See also: Greatest Name, Ya Bahá'u'l-Abhá

**Ancient of Days:** A title of God. In the Bible it appears in the Book of Daniel. It also appears frequently in the Bahá'í Holy Writings.

**Ancient Beauty:** A title of Bahá'u'lláh

**The Arc:** The collection of administrative buildings at the Bahá'í World Centre on Mt. Carmel, Israel. The buildings on the Arc include the Seat of the Universal House of Justice, the International Teaching Centre, the International Archives, and the Centre for the Study of the Sacred Texts.

**Ascension of Abdu'l-Baha** celebration of the rising of the spirit of Abdu'l-Baha to the heavenly dwelling.

**Ascension of Baha'u'llah** recollection of the death of Baha'u'llah, the founder. Observed by prayers and readings. Work is suspended.

**Asmá':** "Names," the ninth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Auxiliary Board:** An appointed administrative body created by the Universal House of Justice to take over and extend the functions of the Hands of the Cause of God. (The House does not have the power to appoint new Hands of the Cause.) Auxiliary Board members are appointed on the basis of their spiritual knowledge and primarily act as advisors to the Local Spiritual Assemblies and individuals in their areas. See also: Continental Board of Counsellors, Hand of the Cause of God, International Teaching Centre

**Ayyam-i-Há:** Literally, "the days of Há" (Há being a letter in the Arabic alphabet associated with God). A four-day period (five in leap years) of charity, gift-giving and celebration that immediately precedes the period of fasting.

**'Azamat:** "Grandeur," the fourth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**The Báb (1819 - 1850):** Literally, "the Gate." The title of Hájí Siyyid Mírzá Alí Muhammad Shirazi, the Prophet-Founder of the Bábí Faith and "Herald" of the Bahá'í Faith. During His brief mission, the Báb called upon the people to purify themselves in preparation for the coming of "Him whom God will manifest." His ministry ended with His public execution on July 9, 1850 in Tabríz, Persia.

**Bábí:** A follower of the Báb. Upon Bahá'u'lláh's declaration of His mission most of the Bábís accepted Him and became Bahá'ís.

**Badí Calendar:** A solar calendar used by Bahá'ís, comprised of 19 months each having 19 days, and four intercalary days (five in leap years) inserted between the 18th and 19th months.

**Bahá:** "Splendour," the first month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Bahá'u'lláh (1817 - 1892):** Literally, "the Glory of God." The title by which is known Mírzá Husayn Alí Nuri, the Prophet-Founder of the Bahá'í Faith. He spent His 40-year ministry in prison and in exile. In spite of great hardships

and his being opposed by the most powerful people in the Islamic world, He persisted in spreading His message of unity and peace, authored the equivalent of 100 volumes (which form the core of the Bahá'í Holy Writings), and called upon the world's leaders to reconcile their differences and establish true justice in the world.

**Bahá'í:** A follower of Bahá'u'lláh; the faith which grew out of the Islamic movement, led by Baha'u'llah, in Persia, now Iran.

**Bahjí:** The house near 'Akká where Bahá'u'lláh was allowed to spend His final years (1879 - 1892). He is buried in a shrine at Bahjí, the holiest spot on Earth for Bahá'ís. See also: 'Akká, Mazra'ih, Most Great Prison

**Bayán:** The most important Book written by the Báb, in which His laws are revealed.

**Birth of the Bab** honouring of the founder of the Babi religion, forerunner to Baha'u'llah and the Baha'i faith.

**Birth of Baha'u'llah** celebration of the birth of their founder and teacher. Refrain from work.

**Camphor Fountain:** A symbol used in the Qur'án indicating the Word of God. ("The righteous shall drink of a cup tempered at the camphor fountain." Qur'án 76:5) A similar image occurs in the Bible, where Jesus refers to "the living water" (John 4:4-42).

**Continental Board of Counsellors:** An appointed administrative body created by the Universal House of Justice to take over and extend the functions of the Hands of the Cause of God. (The House does not have the power to appoint new Hands of the Cause.) The Counsellors are appointed on the basis of their spiritual knowledge and primarily act as advisors to the National Spiritual Assemblies in their areas.

**Covenant:** In the general religious sense, a covenant is an agreement between God and humanity. In Bahá'í terms, two covenants are recognised: the Greater Covenant and the Lesser Covenant. The Greater Covenant is an element of every religion, and provides God's assurance that He will send another Manifestation of God in the future. The Lesser Covenant is specific to the Bahá'í Faith and involves Bahá'u'lláh's assurance that the unity of His followers will be maintained. See also: Greater Covenant, Lesser Covenant

**Creative Word:** The Word of God, which is the agent of creation. The term is only applied to those Holy Writings that can be authenticated as being the actual words of a Manifestation of God. Practically speaking, these are the Qur'án, the Writings of the Báb, and the Writings of Bahá'u'lláh. See also: Manifestation of God

**Day of the Covenanti** celebration of the covenant given in the last will and testament of Baha'u'llah

**Declaration Card:** A document (usually about the size of an index card) used to formally register a person in a Bahá'í community.

**Declaration of the Bab** recognition of the declaration in 1844 by Ali Muhammed that he is the anticipated "Coming One" of all religions. Work is suspended.

**Deepening:** The process of studying the Holy Writings (usually Bahá'í but sometimes those of other religions as well).

**Deputise:** To offer funds to help pay the expenses of pioneers. In general, pioneers pay their own expenses and secure jobs to support themselves in their new locations. However, Bahá'í who are unable to pioneer are encouraged to offer financial support those who can. See also: Homefront Pioneer, Pioneer

**Devotional Meeting:** A gathering where Bahá'ís and those of other faiths come together to pray and read from the Holy Writings of the world's religions. There is usually an emphasis on the Bahá'í Holy Writings, but readings may be and often are drawn from other Holy Books, such as the Bible and the Qur'an.

**The Fast:** Bahá'ís observe a 19-day period of fasting from March 2 through March 20 of each year. The Fast coincides with the month of 'Alá, the 19th (and last) month of the Bahá'í year. During this time, adult Bahá'ís abstain from eating and drinking between the hours of sunrise and sunset. A spiritual discipline, fasting is symbolic of restraint and of obedience to God. Children, the elderly, pregnant and nursing mothers, and the ill are exempted from fasting.

**Feast:** A local gathering held on the first day of each Bahá'í month incorporating devotions, consultation on community events, and socialization. Because each Bahá'í month is nineteen days long, Feasts occur once every nineteen days.

**Fireside:** An informal gathering designed to allow anyone interested in learning about the Bahá'í Faith to explore its teachings and history in a no-pressure atmosphere. Increasingly, this term is being replaced by more descriptive phrases, such as "introductory meeting."

**Fund:** The financial resource that supports the work of an administrative body. Bahá'í Funds exist to support the Universal House of Justice, each National Spiritual Assembly, each Local Spiritual Assembly, each Continental Board of Counsellors, and other institutions as necessary. Only Bahá'ís can contribute to these Funds.

**Greater Covenant:** God's agreement with each Manifestation of God that in exchange for the obedience of His followers another Manifestation of God will appear in the future. See also: Covenant, Lesser Covenant

**Greatest Name** (also "Most Great Name"): A title of Bahá'u'lláh, and various forms of His name. The most common are "Alláh-u-Abhá" ("God, the All-Glorious") and "Ya Bahá'u'l-Abhá" ("O Glory of the All-Glorious"). There are also several calligraphic expressions of the Greatest Name. See also: Alláh-u-Abhá, Ya Bahá'u'l-Abhá

**Guardian:** A hereditary administrative post anticipated by Bahá'u'lláh in the *Kitáb-i-Aqdas* and created by 'Abdu'l-Bahá. The Guardian was given the sole authority to interpret the Holy Writings. 'Abdu'l-Bahá appointed His grandson Shoghi Effendi to be the first Guardian. The line of the Guardians both began and ended with him, since at the time of his death there were no qualified persons who he could appoint as his successor. The *Kitáb-i-Aqdas* also anticipates this, transferring some of the functions of the Guardian to the Universal House of Justice should the line end. See also: Shoghi Effendi

**Hand of the Cause of God:** An appointed administrative position. Hands of the Cause were appointed by Bahá'u'lláh, 'Abdu'l-Bahá, and Shoghi Effendi. (The power to appoint them was given to the Guardian.) The Hands of the Cause, appointed on the basis of their spiritual knowledge and wisdom, act as advisors and emissaries for the Guardian and the Universal House of Justice. As of the present year (2000) there are only two Hands of the Cause still living. See also: Auxiliary Board, Continental Board of Counsellors, International Teaching Centre

**Homefront Pioneer:** A Bahá'í who leaves his or her home and takes up residence elsewhere in the same country for the purpose of spreading Bahá'u'lláh's teachings. See also: Deputise, Pioneer

**Holy Day:** A religious celebration or commemoration. Bahá'ís celebrate eleven Holy Days, on nine of which work should be suspended. These days are: Naw-Rúz (March 21), the First Day of Ridván (April 21), the Ninth Day of Ridván (April 29), the Twelfth Day of Ridván (May 2), the Declaration of the Báb (May 23), the Ascension of Bahá'u'lláh (May 29), the Martyrdom of the Báb (July 9), the Birth of the Báb (October 20), the Birth of Bahá'u'lláh (November 12), the Day of the Covenant (November 26), and the Ascension of 'Abdu'l-Bahá (November 28). The latter two are **not** days on which work should be suspended.

**House of Justice:** An elected administrative body consisting of nine members with jurisdiction over a specified region. Bahá'u'lláh created these Houses of Justice in the *Kitáb-i-Aqdas*. At present, the Universal House of Justice, the supreme administrative body of the Faith, is the only one in existence. The Local and National Spiritual Assemblies are the embryonic forms of future Houses of Justice at their respective levels. See also: Spiritual Assembly

**House of Worship:** A temple in which Bahá'í worship services are held. At present there are only seven Bahá'í Houses of Worship in the world, but in time every Bahá'í community will have one, with associated dependencies such as a university and a home for the aged. See also: Mashriqu'l-Adhkár

**Huqúqu'lláh:** Literally, "the right of God". A payment made to the House of Justice by Bahá'ís based upon their wealth. The payment is equal to 19% of one's wealth, excluding certain items such as one's home and its furnishings, and is made only one time. If one's wealth increases, a payment of 19% of the increase is called for. If one's wealth decreases, no additional payments are required until it rises above the level previously "cleared".

**Ilm:** "Knowledge," the twelfth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Intercalary Days:** insertion of days into the calendar in order to maintain the solar calendar.

**International Teaching Centre:** An appointed administrative body created by the Universal House of Justice to take over and extend the functions of the Hands of the Cause of God. (The House does not have the power to appoint new Hands of the Cause.) The members of the Centre are appointed on the basis of their spiritual knowledge and primarily act as advisors to the Universal House of Justice. See also: Auxiliary Board, Continental Board of Counsellors, Hand of the Cause of God

**Ishráq:** Literally, "splendour." Bahá'u'lláh titled one of His tablets "Ishráqát" in which He enumerates nine "splendours": the profound regard the wealthy and

powerful should have for religion, the establishment of the Most Great Peace, the importance of observing God's commandments, the importance of praiseworthy deeds and an upright character, the need for governments to understand the conditions of their people, union and concord amongst all peoples, the education of children, the authority of the House of Justice, and the establishment of unity and concord as the purpose of religion. See also: House of Justice, Most Great Peace, Tajallí, Taráz  
**'Izzat:** "Might," the tenth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Jalál:** "Glory," the second month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Jamál:** "Beauty," the third month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Kalimát:** "Words," the seventh month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Kamál:** "Perfection," the eighth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Kawthar:** A river in paradise that is the source of all other rivers. Bahá'u'lláh mentions it in a symbolic sense in a number of places in His Writings.

**Knight of Bahá'u'lláh:** A designation conferred by Shoghi Effendi on certain individuals who were the first Bahá'ís to travel to a country or territory for the purposes of spreading the religion.

**Local Spiritual Assembly (LSA):** The elected body that administers the affairs of the Bahá'í Faith at the local level. See also: House of Justice, Spiritual Assembly

**Lesser Covenant:** Bahá'u'lláh's agreement with His followers that in exchange for their obedience to His laws and institutions, He will protect the unity of the religion. See also: Covenant, Greater Covenant

**Lesser Peace:** A state of relative world peace and security created by an international treaty that fixes borders and armaments for all nations and supported by a collective security arrangement. Bahá'u'lláh called upon the world's leaders to establish the Lesser Peace. See also: Most Great Peace  
Letters of the Living: The first eighteen disciples of the Báb, plus the Báb Himself. See also: The Báb

**Lote Tree:** "Sadratu'l-Muntahá" in Arabic. In the English translation of the Bahá'í Writings, the term sometimes appears translated and sometimes untranslated. The Lote Tree is "the tree beyond which there is no passing." In ancient times, the Arabs planted such a tree to mark the end of a road. In the Writings of Bahá'u'lláh, the Lote Tree generally refers to the Manifestation of God. The implication is that the Manifestation of God occupies a station to which ordinary human beings can neither attain nor surpass. See also: Sadratu'l-Muntahá

**Manifestation of God:** A divine Messenger sent by God to reveal His teachings to humanity. The Manifestation is the "express image" of the attributes and perfections of God. There are nine historical Manifestations of God: Abraham, Moses, Zoroaster, Krishna, the Buddha, Jesus, Muhammad, the Báb, and Bahá'u'lláh. There were others before them whose names are lost to history or who are known only as mythical figures (such as Adam and Noah), and there will be others at approximately 1,000-year intervals in the future.

**Martyrdom of the Bab** Ali Mohammed was executed in 1850 by Persian



political and religious powers. Observed by abstaining from commerce and work.

**Masá'il:** "Questions," the fifteenth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Mashíyyat:** "Will," the eleventh month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Mashriqu'l-Adhkár:** Literally, "the dawning-place of the mention of God." A temple in which Bahá'í worship services are held. At present there are only seven Bahá'í Houses of Worship in the world, but in time every Bahá'í community will have one, with associated dependencies such as a university and a home for the aged. See also: House of Worship

**Master:** A title of 'Abdu'l-Bahá. This is a translation of Áqá, a title of respect applied to the eldest son of a family by his siblings.

**Mazra'ih:** The house near 'Akká where Bahá'u'lláh was allowed to live from 1877 to 1879. See also: 'Akká, Bahjí, Most Great Prison

**Meditation:** Contemplation and reflection on something, particularly the Holy Writings. There is no set formula or technique for Bahá'í meditation but Shoghi Effendi likened it to listening for God's answer to prayer.

**Mihdí:** Literally, "One Who is guided." A title of the 12th Imám in Shí'ih Islám, and therefore also a title of the Báb, who is the "return" of that Imám.

**Mithqál:** A unit of weight used by Bahá'u'lláh to fix the amount of gold or silver to be paid for various purposes, such as Huqúqu'lláh, dowries, and fines. Note 78 to the Kitáb-i-Aqdas (pp200-1) states that the mithqál used by Bahá'ís is smaller than the traditional mithqál; nine mithqáls are equivalent to 32.775 grams or 1.05374 troy ounces. See also: Huqúqu'lláh

**Most Great Peace:** A state of world peace and security overseen by a world government and based upon principles and laws elaborated by Bahá'u'lláh. Bahá'ís believe that the Most Great Peace will be the realization of "the Kingdom of God on Earth." See also: Lesser Peace

**Most Great Prison:** 'Akká, the prison-city near Haifa (in modern-day Israel) where Bahá'u'lláh was imprisoned from late August, 1868 through June, 1877.

**Mufti:** A Muslim legal expert who is empowered to interpret and give rulings on religious law.

**Mulk:** "Dominion," the eighteenth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Mustaghath:** Literally, "He Who is invoked for help." The Báb referred to the coming Manifestation of God as Mustaghath in one of His Tablets.

**National Spiritual Assembly (NSA):** The elected body that administers the affairs of the Bahá'í Faith at the national level.

**Naw-Rúz:** The traditional Persian New Year's Day, celebrated on the Spring Equinox. Naw-Rúz is the first day of the Bahá'í Year and is celebrated as a Holy Day.

**Núr:** "Light," the fifth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Nineteen Day Fast** Fast to be observed by adult Baha'is in good health - sunrise to sundown - no food or drink.

**Ninth Day of Ridvan** celebration of the arrival of Baha'u'llah at a sacred garden.

**Obligatory Prayer:** A special prayer required by religious law. Bahá'u'lláh specified three obligatory prayers for Bahá'ís to use, one of which must be said each day. The choice of which prayer to say is left to the individual. Ablutions are required as part of obligatory prayers. See also: Ablutions

**Pioneer:** A Bahá'í who leaves his or her home and takes up residence in another country for the purpose of spreading Bahá'u'lláh's teachings. See also: Deputise, Homefront Pioneer

**Progressive Revelation:** The Bahá'í belief that God has sent successive revelations in order to uplift and educate humanity.

**Qá'im:** Literally, "He who arises." The Promised One of Islám. Bahá'ís believe that the Báb was the Qá'im.

**Qawl:** "Speech," the fourteenth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Qiblih:** The "Point of Adoration" towards which one turns during prayer. In former times the Qiblih had been Jerusalem. Muhammad changed the Qiblih to Mecca. The Báb specified that "The Qiblih is indeed He Whom God will make manifest [Bahá'u'lláh]; whenever He moveth, it moveth, until He shall come to rest." Bahá'u'lláh confirmed this, so that today the Qiblih is the Shrine of Bahá'u'lláh at Bahjí, where His earthly remains rest.

**Qudrat:** "Power," the thirteenth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Qurratu'l-'Ayn:** Literally, "the Solace of the Eyes." The Báb gave this name to Táhirih after she embraced His Cause. (Bahá'u'lláh later gave her the name Táhirih, which means "the Pure One.") In some of His Writings, the Báb also refers to Himself as Qurratu'l-'Ayn.

**Rahmat:** "Mercy," the sixth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Regional Council:** The Universal House of Justice created Regional Councils in some countries beginning in 1998 as an intermediate level of administration. Possessing some of the functions of Spiritual Assemblies, these Councils presently provide for co-ordination of activities throughout their respective regions. See also: Spiritual Assembly

**Revelation:** The unveiling by God to humanity of something previously hidden. The Manifestations of God and the minor prophets are the recipients of revelations from God. The term is also frequently used to describe revealed Writings such as the Qur'án or the Writings of the Báb and Bahá'u'lláh.

**Ridván:** Literally, "Paradise." A twelve-day festival, held from April 21 through May 2, celebrating Bahá'u'lláh's public declaration of His mission on the eve of His departure from Baghdád for exile in Constantinople. The first, ninth and twelfth days of Ridván are Holy Days and work is to be suspended. See also: Holy Day

**Ringstone Symbol:** A calligraphic design commonly used on Bahá'í rings and pendants, and often displayed in Bahá'í homes. It consists of three horizontal bars representing the worlds of God, the Manifestations of God, and man; a vertical line joining the three bars, representing the Manifestations of God, who join the world of God with the world of man; and a pair of five-pointed stars, representing the Báb and Bahá'u'lláh, the Manifestations of God for this age. The ringstone symbol was designed by 'Abdu'l-Bahá and rendered by Mishkín-Qalam, a close companion of His and the leading calligrapher of Persia.

**Sadratu'l-Muntahá:** "Lote Tree" in English. In the English translation of the Bahá'í Writings, the term sometimes appears translated and sometimes untranslated. The Lote Tree is "the tree beyond which there is no passing." In

ancient times, the Arabs planted such a tree to mark the end of a road. In the Writings of Bahá'u'lláh, the Lote Tree generally refers to the Manifestation of God. The implication is that the Manifestation of God occupies a station to which ordinary human beings can neither attain nor surpass. See also: Lote Tree, Manifestation of God

**Seeker:** Specifically, an individual who is investigating the Bahá'í Faith out of a desire to determine its spiritual truth. More broadly, anyone searching for spiritual truth in any form.

**Sharaf:** "Honour," the sixteenth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Shoghi Effendi** (1896 - 1957): The great-grandson of Bahá'u'lláh, appointed by 'Abdu'l-Bahá to be the first Guardian of the Bahá'í Faith. See also: Guardian

**Spiritual Assembly:** An elected administrative body consisting of nine members with jurisdiction over a specified region. At present, Local Spiritual Assemblies (LSAs) govern the affairs of local Bahá'í communities, while National Spiritual Assemblies (NSAs) govern the affairs of national Bahá'í communities. In the future, these Spiritual Assemblies will evolve into Houses of Justice at their respective levels. See also: House of Justice

**Sultán:** "Sovereignty," the seventeenth month in the Bahá'í calendar.

**Tablet:** A term used by the Báb, Bahá'u'lláh, and 'Abdu'l-Bahá to designate many of their Writings. Tablets are generally epistles (letters) addressed to specific individuals.

**Tajallí:** Literally, "effulgence." Bahá'u'lláh titled one of His tablets "Tajallíyát" in which He enumerates four "effulgences": the knowledge of God, steadfastness in God's Cause, the acquisition of knowledge, and the Divinity of the Manifestation of God. See also: Ishráq, Taráz

**Taráz:** Literally, "ornament." Bahá'u'lláh titled one of His tablets "Tarazát" in which He enumerates six "ornaments": knowledge of one's own self, to consort with the followers of all religions in a spirit of fellowship and friendliness, development of a goodly character, trustworthiness, the protection and preservation of the stations of God's servants, and the acquisition of knowledge. See also: Ishráq, Tajallí

**Universal House of Justice:** The supreme administrative institution of the Bahá'í Faith. See also: House of Justice

**Ustad:** A skilled tradesman.

**World Religion Day** day dedicated to the unity and oneness of all world religions.

**Writings:** Shorthand for "Holy Writings," usually used specifically to denote the Bahá'í Holy Writings, which consist of the authenticated Writings of the Báb, Bahá'u'lláh, and 'Abdu'l-Bahá.

**Ya Bahá'u'l-Abhá:** A form of the Greatest Name, literally meaning "O Glory of the All-Glorious." It is an invocation, often used by Bahá'ís as an affirmation of faith, as an expression of praise and gratitude, and to call on God's assistance and support. See also: Alláh-u-Abhá, Greatest Name

**Year of Service:** A year spent in volunteer service to a community. Bahá'ís, especially youth, are encouraged to spend a year of such service. A year of

service frequently involves participation in social and economic development projects in parts of the world where the need is great.

# BUDDHISM GLOSSARY



As Buddhism spread throughout the East, it came to be expressed in many different languages. Terms in the Sanskrit and Pali of India are in most common use in the West, although Japanese and Tibetan terms also occur frequently. Pali is the language of the texts of the Theravada school, whilst Sanskrit is used for general Mahayana. Zen Buddhism uses terms expressed in Japanese, and Tibetan Buddhism, Tibetan. There is no preferred form. For convenience, Pali terms usually appear first, in bold except in cases where the Sanskrit or other alternative is the more usual form.

**Abhidhamma**, Abhidharma: Further or higher teaching. The philosophy and psychology of Buddhism in abstract, systematic form.

**Abhidhamma Pitaka**, Abhidharma Pitaka: This is the third of the three principal sections of the canon of basic scripture. It is a systematic, philosophical and psychological treatment of the teachings given in the Sutta Pitaka

No Pali word **Amitabha Amitayus** Also, Amida (Japanese): Buddhas having unlimited light and life respectively.

**Agama**, Ahimsa: Non violence

**Akanishta**: A Pure Land where Bodhisattvas attain enlightenment.

**Akshobya**: The manifestation of the aggregate of consciousness of all Buddhas. He has a blue-coloured body.

**Amitabha Amitayus** (Sanskrit) Also, Amida (Japanese): a celestial buddha described in the scriptures of the Mahayana school of Buddhism. Amitabha is the principal buddha in the Pure Land sect, a branch of Buddhism practiced mainly in East Asia. According to these scriptures, Amitabha possesses infinite merits resulting from good deeds over countless past lives as a bodhisattva named Dharmakara.

**Amitayus**: the Buddha of long life, good fortune and wisdom. He is depicted as red in colour, holding a life vase brimming with the nectar of immortality. Buddha Amitayus is the samboghakaya "enjoyment body" of Buddha Amitabha who is the "emanation body". Buddha Amitayus is practised extensively in Tibetan Buddhism and New Kadampa Tradition..

**Analytical meditation**: Tibetan Buddhism speaks of two different types of meditation. One is Stabilizing and could be characterized by a type of "mindless" repetition of a word or phrase (mantra/japa) or by simply doing an action over and over like yantra (the continual gazing at an object, ie: a picture or statue of a deity, the symbol for OM, a flame, etc.). The other type of meditation is Analytical. In this form, the practitioner doesn't simply repeat a word over and over or look at a picture repeatedly. The meditator would try to understand everything they know or everything that can be known about the object of their attention.

**Anapanasati**, Anapanasmrti: Mindfulness of the breath. The practice most usually associated with the development of concentration and calm, but also used in the training of Vipassana (insight).

**Anatta**, Anatman: No self; no soul. Insubstantiality; denial of a real or permanent self.

**Anicca**, Anitya: Impermanence; transience. Instability of all things, including the self.

**Appearing object**: In general, an object that appears to a mind. In the context of generation stage meditation, the appearing object is the mandala and Deities. See Understanding the Mind.

**Arahat, Arahant, Arhat**: Enlightened disciple. The fourth and highest stage of Realisation recognised by the Theravada tradition. One whose mind is free from all greed, hatred and ignorance. Sanskrit term for Foe Destroyer. A practitioner who has abandoned all delusions and their seeds by training on the spiritual paths, and who will never again be reborn in samsara. In this context, the term 'Foe' refers to the delusions.

**Asala**: (Turning of the Wheel of Teaching) observance of the day when Gautama Buddha made his first public proclamation to five ascetics. He taught the middle way, the noble eight-fold path and the four noble truths.

**Asanga** (also called Aryasanga): born around 300 CE, was an exponent of the yogacara school of Buddhist philosophy. Traditionally, he and his half-brother Vasubandhu are regarded as the founders of this school.

**Asoka**, Ashoka: Emperor of India in the 3rd century BCE.

**Aspiration**: A mental factor that focuses on a desired object and takes an interest in it.

**Aspiring bodhichitta**: someone who aspires to reach enlightenment to benefit everyone as much as is possible

**Atta**, Atman: Self; soul.

**Atisha**: (C.E. 982-1054) a Buddhist teacher from the Pala Empire who, along with Konchog Gyalpo and Marpa, was one of the major figures in the establishment of the Sarma lineages in Tibet after the repression of Buddhism by King Langdarma (Glang Darma).

**Avalokiteshvara**: a bodhisattva who embodies the compassion of all Buddhas. He is the one of the more widely revered bodhisattvas in mainstream Mahayana Buddhism. In China and its sphere of cultural influence, Avalokitesvara is often depicted in a female form known as Guan Yin..

**Awakened One Buddha**: means "Awakened one" or "Enlightened one" He is believed to have awakened from the sleep of ignorance and is completely free from problems and suffering.

**Beginningless time**: A belief that there is no beginning to mind and so no beginning to time. Therefore, all living beings have and still are spinning and will continue to spin back and forth, going around and around the wheel of birth and death

**Bhikkhu**, Bhikshu: Fully ordained Buddhist monk.

**Bhikkhuni**, Bhikshuni: Fully ordained Buddhist nun.

**Bodhi Day**: celebration of the time when Prince Gautama took his place under the Bodhi tree, vowing to remain there until he attained supreme enlightenment.

**Bodhi Tree**: The tree (ficus religiosa) under which the Buddha realised Enlightenment. It is known as the Tree of Wisdom.

**Bodhisatta**, No Sanskrit word: A Wisdom Being. One intent on becoming, or destined to become, a Buddha. Gotama, before his Enlightenment as the historical Buddha.

No Pali word **Bodhisattva**: A being destined for Enlightenment, who postpones final attainment of Buddhahood in order to help living beings (see Mahayana).

**Brahma Viharas**, No Sanskrit word: The four sublime states: loving kindness, compassion, sympathetic joy, and evenness of mind.

**Buddha**, Buddha: Awakened or Enlightened One.

**Buddha Day**: Buddhists celebrate the birthday of Buddha

**Buddha seed**: The root mind of a sentient being, and its ultimate nature. Buddha seed, Buddha nature, and Buddha lineage are synonyms. All sentient beings have Buddha seed and therefore the potential to attain Buddhahood.

**Buddhist**: Anyone who from the depths of his or her heart goes for refuge to the Three Jewels – Buddha Jewel, Dharma Jewel, and Sangha Jewel. See Introduction to Buddhism.

**Chakravatin king**: An extremely fortunate being who has accumulated a vast amount of merit and as a result has taken rebirth as a king with dominion over all four continents as described in Buddhist cosmology, or, at the very least, over one of the four continents. At present there are no Chakravatin kings in our world, and there is no one who has complete dominion over our continent, Jambudipa.

**Chandrakirti**: (circa 7th century CE) abbot of Nalanda University and a disciple of Nagarjuna and a commentator on his works. Chandrakirti was the most famous member of what the Tibetans came to call the Prasagika school of Madhyamaka, refuting the tenets of various Buddhist and non-Buddhist philosophies. In the course of these refutations he criticises the Vij-naanavaada or Idealist school of Buddhism

**Chekhawa, Geshe** (1102-1176): was not entirely satisfied with his practice. He sought teachings from Rechungpa, one of Milarepa's main disciples, and later from the Kadampa Teacher Geshe Chagshinpa. One day, when in Geshe Chagshinpa's room, he found a short text entitled 'Eight Verses of Training the Mind'. Two lines in the sixth verse caught his attention: May I accept defeat and offer the victory to others. He spread the study and practice of training the mind throughout Tibet.

**Compassion**: wishing others to be free from suffering.

**Dalai Lama** (Tibetan), No Pali or Sanskrit words: Great Ocean. Spiritual and temporal leader of the Tibetan people. This title, meaning 'Ocean Lama', was given by the Mongolian ruler Altan Khan to Sonam Gyatso (AD 1543-1588). Although he was the first to be so called, he became known as the third Dalai Lama, his two previous incarnations acquiring posthumously the titles of first and second Dalai Lama.

**Dalai Lama birthday**: Buddhist observation with traditional dances, picnics and singing. Each Dalai Lama is seen as reincarnation of predecessor.

**Dana**, Dana: Generosity; giving; gift.

**Denial**: A deluded mental factor that does not wish to purify non-virtuous actions that we have committed or downfalls that we have incurred.

**Dhamma**, Dharma: Universal law; ultimate truth. The teachings of the Buddha. A key Buddhist term.

**Dhammapada**, Dharmapada: Famous scripture of 423 verses.

**Dharma Day**: Buddha's first discourse following his enlightenment.

**Dharmakirti:** (circa 6th to 7th century CE) a South Indian Brahmin who became a teacher at the famed Nalanda University, as well as a poet. He built on and re-interpreted the work of the pioneer in Buddhist Logic, Dignaga, and was very influential among Brahman logicians as well as Buddhists. His theories became normative in Tibet and are studied to this day as a part of the basic monastic curriculum.

**Dignaga:** (circa 5th century CE) an Indian scholar and one of the Buddhist founders of Indian logic. He was born into a Brahmin family in Simhavakta near Kanchi (Kanchipuram), and very little is known of his early years, except that he took as his spiritual preceptor Nagadatta of the Vatsiputriya school. This branch of Buddhist thought defended the view that there exists a kind of real personality independent of the elements or aggregates composing it..

**Dorje Shugdän:** "Powerful thunderbolt"; is a relatively recent, but highly controversial, deity within the complex pantheons of Himalayan Buddhism. Dorje Shugden is variously regarded as a wrathful aspect of Manjushri (fully enlightened being), a wrathful spirit of a deceased lama, as a local worldly (unenlightened) spirit - also known as Dhol-rgyal, a demonic or dæmonic force (spirit)

**Dromtönpa:** (1004-1064 CE) a Tibetan Mahayana Buddhist school. Dromtönpa, a Tibetan lay master and the foremost disciple of the great Indian Buddhist Master Atisha (982-1054), founded it and passed three lineages to his disciples. The Kadampas were quite famous and respected for their proper and earnest Dharma practice. The most evident teachings of that tradition were the teachings on Bodhichitta (later these special presentations became known as Lojong (Blo-ljong)) and Lamrim (Stages of the Path) by Atisha.

**Dukkha,** Duhkha: Suffering; ill; unsatisfactoriness; imperfection. The nature of existence according to the first Noble Truth.

**Eightfold Path:** 1. Right view means to see and to understand things as they really are and to realise the Four Noble Truths. 2. Right Intention refers to the kind of mental energy that controls our actions. It is a commitment to ethical and mental self-improvement. 3. Right Speech because words can break or save lives, make enemies or friends, start war or create peace. 4. Right Action because unwholesome actions lead to unsound states of mind, while wholesome actions lead to sound states of mind. 5. Right Livelihood means that one should earn one's living in a righteous way and that wealth should be gained legally and peacefully. 6. Right Effort because without it nothing can be achieved. 7. Right Mindfulness is the mental ability to see things as they are, with clear consciousness. 8. Right Concentration means a state where all mental faculties are unified and directed onto one particular object.

**Enlightened:** Someone who has 'seen the light', that is, has understood some great truth.

**Enlightenment:** when a Buddhist discovers the truth about life.

**Four noble truths:** 1. Life means suffering because human nature is not perfect and neither is the world we live in. We have to endure physical suffering such as pain, sickness, injury, tiredness, old age, and eventually death; and we have to endure psychological suffering like sadness, fear, frustration, disappointment, and depression. 2. The origin of suffering is



attachment to transient things and the ignorance thereof. Ignorance is the lack of understanding of how our mind is attached to impermanent things. The reasons for suffering are craving and clinging. 3. The cessation of suffering is attainable through the unmaking of sensual craving and conceptual attachment. Nirodha extinguishes all forms of clinging and attachment. 4. The path to the cessation of suffering. There is a path to the end of suffering - a gradual path of self-improvement, which is described more in detail in the Eightfold Path.

**Four opponent powers:** Four powers that are essential for successful purification: the power of reliance, the power of regret, the power of the opponent force, and the power of promise. See Joyful Path of Good Fortune, The Bodhisattva Vow, and Meaningful to Behold.

**Four protections:** Special qualities of a Buddha through which he or she is able to protect sentient beings from the four maras, or demons.

**Geshe:** a Buddhist academic degree for scholars

**Geshe Kelsang Gyatso Rinpoche (Born 1931 CE):** A highly respected Tibetan Meditation Master and scholar, Geshe Kelsang Gyatso is the founder of the New Kadampa Tradition and the holder of the lineage of all Buddha's teachings as passed down by Atisha, Je Tsongkhapa, Je Phabongkhapa and Kyabje Trijang Rinpoche. He is now a naturalised British Citizen and lives at Manjushri Buddhist Centre in Cumbria. His tireless and pure example is a source of great inspiration to all of his students world-wide.

**Gompa** (Tibetan), No Pali or Sanskrit words: Monastery; place of meditation.

**Gotama, Gautama:** Family name of the Buddha.

**Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life:** a famous Mahayana Buddhist text written in Sanskrit by Shantideva (Santideva), a Buddhist monk at Nalanda Monastic University in India around 700 CE. It has ten chapters dedicated to the development of bodhicitta (the mind of enlightenment) through the practice of the six perfections (Skt Paramitas).

**Hana Matsuri:** Japanese Buddhist flower festival invoking a plentiful harvest.

**Jataka,** No Sanskrit word: Birth story. Accounts of the previous lives of the Buddha.

**Je Phabongkhapa** (CE 1878-1941): A Tibetan Master, holder of the lineage of all Buddha's teachings as passed down by generations of great teachers. Je Phabongkhapa was the most highly regarded Gelugpa Teacher of his day and was the Root Guru, or teacher, of Kyabje Trijang Rinpoche. Like previous practitioners of this lineage, he showed a perfect example of how to teach and practice all Buddha's teachings.

**Je Tsongkhapa** (CE 1357-1419): A Tibetan Master who completely revitalised Buddhist teachings in Tibet. Je Tsongkhapa showed a perfect example of how to build the foundation of the spiritual path, how to progress on that path, and how to complete it. Since then thousands of practitioners have achieved full enlightenment in one life by following the example of Je Tsongkhapa and sincerely practising his teachings

**Jhana,** Dhyana Also Ch'an (Chinese) and Zen (Japanese): Advanced meditation.

**Kadam:** A Tibetan Mahayana Buddhist school. Dromtönpa, a Tibetan lay master and the foremost disciple of the great Indian Buddhist Master Atisha (982-1054), founded it and passed three lineages to his disciples. The Kadampas were quite famous and respected for their proper and earnest Dharma practice. The most evident teachings of that tradition were the teachings on Bodhichitta (later these special presentations became known as Lojong (Blo-ljong)) and Lamrim (Stages of the Path) by Atisha.

**Kadampa:** An international Buddhist tradition presenting teachings in a manner suitable for the modern world..

**Kamma, Karma:** Action. Intentional actions that affect one's circumstances in this and future lives. The Buddha's insistence that the effect depends on volition marks the Buddhist treatment of kamma as different from the Hindu understanding of karma.

**Kangyur:** The Tibetan Buddhist canon is a loosely defined list of sacred texts recognized by various schools of Tibetan Buddhism, made up of the Kangyur or Kanjur ('The Translation of the Word') and the Tengyur or Tanjur ('Translation of Treatises').

**Karuna, Karuna:** Compassion.

**Kashyapa Buddha:** Kassapa is the name of a Buddha, the third of the five Buddhas of the present aeon (the Bhaddakappa or 'Fortunate Aeon'), and the sixth of the six Buddhas prior to the historical Buddha mentioned in the earlier parts of the Pali Canon(D.ii.7). In the Buddhist texts in Sanskrit, this Buddha is known as Kasyapa.

**Kathina:** Buddhist monks end a three month rain retreat and are given new robes. Friends and family join to celebrate harmony.

**Kesa** (Japanese), No Pali or Sanskrit words: The robe of a Buddhist monk, nun, or priest.

**Khädrubje** (CE 1385-1438): The heart disciple of Je Tsongkhapa who taught that the attainment of Buddhahood, which takes aeons to accomplish through other practices, can be accomplished in one life through the practice of Guru yoga.

**Khandha, Skandha:** Heap; aggregate. The Five Khandhas together make up the 'person' (form, feeling, perception, mental formation and consciousness).

**Khanti, Kshanti:** Patience; forbearance.

**Kilesa, Klesa:** Mental defilement or fire, such as greed, hatred or ignorance.

**Kimono:** Loose garment worn by Japanese.

**Koan** (Japanese), No Pali or Sanskrit words: A technical term used in Zen Buddhism referring to enigmatic or paradoxical questions used to develop intuition. Also refers to religious problems encountered in daily life.

**Kyabje Trijang Rinpoche** (1901 - 1981 CE): A Tibetan Master, the Heart Disciple of Je Phabongkhapa, Kyabje Trijang Rinpoche was also the most highly regarded Gelugpa Teacher of his generation and showed a perfect example of how to practice the Buddhist path. He is the Root Guru of Geshe Kelsang Gyatso and was the lineage holder of all Buddha's teachings during his life.

**Kwan-yin** (Chinese), No Pali or Sanskrit words Also, Kannon (Japanese): Bodhisattva of Compassion, depicted in female form. Identified with Bodhisattva Avalokitesvara.

**Lama** (Tibetan) No Pali or Sanskrit words: Teacher, or one who is revered.

No Pali word, **Lotus Sutra**: A scripture of major importance to various schools within the Mahayana tradition. It describes the virtues of the Bodhisattva, and emphasises that all sentient beings possess Buddha-nature and can attain Enlightenment (Nirvana).

**Lama Losang Tubwang Dorjechang**, Lama Losang Tubwang Dorjechang: A special manifestation of Je Tsongkhapa revealed directly to the great Yogi Dharmavajra. 'Lama' indicates that he is a Spiritual Guide, 'Losang' that he is Je Tsongkhapa (whose ordained name was Losang Dragpa), 'Tubwang' that he is Buddha Shakyamuni, and 'Dorjechang' that he is Vajradhara. This indicates that in reality our Spiritual Guide is the same nature as these three holy beings.

**Lamrim**: When Atisha was invited and came to Tibet he was asked by Changchup Od to give a complete and easily accessible summary of the doctrine in order to clarify wrong views - especially the apparent contradictions found across the Sutras and their commentaries. Based upon this request Atisha (whose presentation of the doctrine became later known as the Kadampa tradition) taught what came to be known as the Lam Rim for the Tibetans.

**Langri Tangpa, Geshe** (CE 1054-1123): One of the disciples of Geshe Potowa and the author of Eight Verses for Training the Mind. One day, one of his close attendants told him, "The others call you Langri Tangpa Gloomy-face." "How could my face be bright and cheery when I think about all the sufferings in the three worlds of samsara?" the Geshe replied. It is said that Langri Tangpa only ever smiled once. He saw a mouse trying to move a turquoise that was on his mandala. But the mouse could not lift the jewel on its own, so it called, "Tsik! Tsik!," and another mouse came along too. One mouse pushed the turquoise while the other pulled. That made Langri Tangpa smile.

**Ling Rinpoche** (CE 1903-1983): The seventh in this line of reincarnated masters, a number of whom have acted as tutors to the Dalai Lamas of Tibet

**Lojong**: a practice in the Tibetan Buddhist tradition based on a set of proverbs formulated in Tibet in the 12th century by Chekawa. Practitioners undertake to connect with the world in an unconditionally positive way, and also to take full responsibility for their experience of it. The practice involves redefining, reconceptualizing and reprogramming one's intent and way of thinking - 'Mind Training'.

**Lotus posture**: A cross-legged sitting posture which originated in representations and meditative practices of Hinduism.

**Madhyamika**: The rejection of two extreme philosophies, and therefore represents the "middle way" between eternalism (the view that something is eternal and unchanging) and nihilism (the assertion that all things are intrinsically already destroyed or rendered nonexistent. This is nihilism in the sense of Indian philosophy, and may differ somewhat from Western philosophical nihilism).

**Magga Marga**: Path, leading to cessation of suffering. The fourth Noble Truth. No Pali word

**Mahayana**: Literally Greater Vehicle. It constitutes an inclusive faith characterized by the adoption of new, Mahayana sutras, in addition to the traditional Pali canon or Agama texts, and a shift in the basic purpose and

concepts of Buddhism. Mahayana sees itself as penetrating further and more profoundly into the Buddha's Dharma.

**Magha Puja Day:** Celebration of the presentation of teachings by Lord Buddha to an assembly of holy men.

**Mahakaruna:** Sanskrit term for 'great compassion'

**Mahasiddha:** A type of eccentric yogis or tantrikas important in Tantric Hinduism and Tibetan Buddhism. A Siddha or adept is an individual who, through the practice of sadhana attains the realization of siddhis or psychic and spiritual abilities and powers. It was the Mahasiddhas who instituted the practices that birthed the Inner Tantras. Their historical influence throughout the Indic and Himalayan region was vast and they reached mythic proportions which is codified in their hagiography. The Mahasiddha are acknowledged as the founders of many Indian and Buddhist traditions and lineages.

**Mahayana:** Sanskrit term for 'Great Vehicle', the spiritual path to great enlightenment. The Mahayana goal is to attain Buddhahood for the benefit of all sentient beings by completely abandoning delusions and their imprints.

**Maitreya:** A bodhisattva who in the Buddhist tradition is to appear on Earth, achieve complete enlightenment, and teach the pure dharma. According to scriptures, Maitreya will be a successor of the historic Sakyamuni Buddha, the founder of Buddhism. The prophecy of the arrival of Maitreya is found in the canonical literature of all Buddhist sects (Theravada, Mahayana, Vajrayana) and is accepted by most Buddhists as a statement about an actual event that will take place in the distant future.

**Mala** No Sanskrit word Also, Juzu (Japanese): String of 108 beads used in Buddhist practice used to count recitations of prayers or mantras (like a rosary).

**Mandala:** Offering An offering of the entire universe visualized as a Pure Land, with all its inhabitants as pure beings.

**Manjushri:** A bodhisattva in the Mahayana and Vajrayana traditions of Buddhism, and is considered a yidam, or titular deity in Tibetan specifically. Manjusri is the bodhisattva associated with wisdom, doctrine and awareness. Historically, Manjusri was a disciple of the Buddha. The Sanskrit term Mañjusri can be translated as "Gentle Glory"

**Mantra:** Literally 'mind protection'. Words repeated over and over again.

**Mara:** The demon who tempted Gautama Buddha by trying to seduce him with the vision of beautiful women who, in various legends, are often said to be his daughters. In Buddhist cosmology, Mara personifies unskillfulness, the "death" of the spiritual life. He is a tempter, distracting humans from practising the spiritual life by making the mundane alluring or the negative seem positive.

**Medicine Buddha:** The Buddha of healing. His full name means "Medicine Master Lapis Lazuli Light". In Mahayana Buddhism, Bhaiṣajyaguru represents the healing aspect of the historical Buddha Sakyamuni. The use of the analogy of a Buddha being depicted as a doctor who cures the illness of suffering using the medicine of his teachings appears widely in Buddhist scriptures.

**Metta, Maitri:** Loving kindness. A pure love which is neither grasping nor possessive.

**Metta Sutta,** No Sanskrit word: Buddhist scripture which describes the nature of loving kindness.

**Metteya**, Maitreya: One who has the nature of loving kindness. Name of the future Buddha.

**Milarepa** (CE1040-1123): One of Tibet's most famous yogis and poets, a student of Marpa Lotsawa, and a major figure in the history of the Kagyu (Bka'-brgyud) school of Tibetan Buddhism. His writings, often referred to as the Songs of Milarepa, are canonical Mahayana Buddhist texts and in particular emphasize the temporary nature of the physical body and the need for non-attachment.

Mudda, **Mudra**: Ritual gesture, as illustrated by the hands of Buddha images.

**Mudita**, Mudita: Sympathetic joy. Welcoming the good fortune of others.

**Nagarjuna**: An Indian philosopher, the founder of the Madhyamaka (Middle Path) school of Mahayana Buddhism, and arguably the most influential Buddhist thinker after Gautama Buddha himself. His writings were the basis for the formation of the Madhyamaka (Middle Way) school, which was transmitted to China under the name of the Three Treatise (Sanlun) School. He is credited with developing the philosophy of the Prajnaparamita sutras, and was closely associated with the Buddhist university of Nalanda. In the Jodo Shinshu branch of Buddhism, he is considered the First Patriarch..

**Naropa** (CE 1016-1100): an Indian Buddhist mystic and monk  
Nibbana, **Nirvana**: Blowing out of the fires of greed, hatred and ignorance, and the state of secure perfect peace that follows. A key Buddhist term.

**Nichiren Daishonin Memorial**: Memory of Nichiren Daishonin and the Dai-Gohonzon, the true object of worship, for all humanity.

**Nirodha**, Nirodha: Cessation (of suffering). The third Noble Truth.

**Nirvana**: A Sanskrit word that literally means "to cease blowing" (as when a candle flame ceases to flicker) and/or extinguishing (that is, of the passions). It is a sramana philosophical concept, used by the Jains and the Buddhists, to describe the enlightenment and liberation of their respective teachers.

**Nirvana Day**: A regional observance of the death of the Buddha.

**Nyungnä**: Retreat to purify negative karma and accumulate merit and wisdom. It is a two-day practice focusing on keeping vows, making prostrations to 1000-armed Avalokiteshvara, the Buddha of Compassion

**Obon Festival**: Japanese Buddhist festival to honour deceased ancestors. Involves lighting of bonfires, traditional meals, paper lanterns, folk dances.

**Panna**, Prajna: Wisdom. Understanding the true nature of things.

**Parami**, Paramita: A perfection or virtue. One of the six or ten perfections necessary for the attainment of Buddhahood.

**Parinibbana**, Parinirvana: Final and complete nirvana reached at the passing away of a Buddha and his entry into a state of complete detachment.

**Patimokkha**, Pratimoksha: The training rules of a monk or nun - 227 in the case of a Theravada monk.

**Pavarana Day**: A Buddhist festival marking the end of the Rains Retreat, primarily observed by monks in monasteries.

**Pitaka**, No Sanskrit word: Basket. Collection of scriptures (see Tipitaka).

**Pratimoksha vow**: Given by the Buddha to his followers. "Prati" means 'towards' or 'every', "moksha" liberation from cyclic existence. The Pratimoksha comprehends the vows for nuns and monks (Buddhist

monastics) as well as vows for the lay followers of Buddhism. The Pratimoksha belongs to the Vinaya of the Buddhist doctrine and is seen as the very basis of Buddhism. The Pratimoksha of the Mulasarvastavadin lineage, followed in Tibetan Buddhism, is taken for the whole life and the vows end when the person who received it died or has broken one or more of the four root vows.

**Pure Land:** A broad branch of Mahayana Buddhism and currently one of the most popular schools of Buddhism in East Asia, along with Chán. In Chinese Buddhism, most monks practise it, some combining it with Chan (Zen). It is a devotional or "faith"-oriented branch of Buddhism focused on Amitabha Buddha. The main idea behind Pure Land Buddhism is the East Asian world view that the Buddhist world was in decline and that Nirvana had become increasingly difficult to obtain for the common people. Instead of meditative work toward enlightenment, Pure Land Buddhism teaches that through devotion to just Amitabha, one will be reborn in the Pure Land in which enlightenment is guaranteed.

**Rohatsu:** Celebration of the enlightenment of Buddha.

**Rupa, Rupa:** Form. Used of an image of the Buddha; also, the first of the Five Khandhas.

**Sakyamuni, Shakyamuni:** Sage of the Shakyas (the tribe of the Buddha). Title of the historical Buddha.

**Samadhi, Samadhi:** Meditative absorption. A state of deep meditation.

**Samatha, Samatha:** A state of concentrated calmness; meditation (see Vipassana).

**Samsara, Samsara:** Everyday life. The continual round of birth, sickness, old age and death which can be transcended by following the Eightfold Path and Buddhist teaching.

**Samudaya, Samudaya:** Arising; origin (of suffering). The second Noble Truth.

**Sangha, Sangha:** Community; assembly. Often used for the order of bhikkhus and bhikkunis in Theravadin countries. In the Mahayana countries, the Sangha includes lay devotees and priests, eg in Japan.

**Sankhara, Samskara:** Mental/karmic formation. The fourth of the five Khandhas.

**Sanna, Samjna:** Perception. Third of the five Khandhas.

**Satori, (Japanese)** No Pali or Sanskrit words: Awakening. A term used in Zen Buddhism.

**Sautrantika:** an early school of Buddhist philosophy. Their name means literally "those who rely upon the sutras", and indicated their rejection of the Abhidharma texts of other early Buddhist schools.

**Shantideva (CE 687-763):** An 8th-century Indian Buddhist scholar at Nalanda University and an adherent of the Prasangika Madhyamaka philosophy.

**Siddattha, Siddhartha:** Wish-fulfilled. The personal name of the historical Buddha.

**Sila, Sila:** Morality.

**Stupa** (from Sanskrit and Pali, literally meaning "heap"): Is a mound-like structure containing Buddhist relics--typically, the remains of a Buddha or saint

**Sutta**, Sutra: The teachings of Buddha that are open to everyone to practise without the need for empowerment. These include Buddha's teachings of the three turnings of the Wheel of Dharma.

**Sutta Pitaka**, Sutra Pitaka: The second of the three collections - principally of teachings - that comprise the canon of basic scripture.

**Tanha**, Trishna Thirst: craving; desire (rooted in ignorance). Desire as the cause of suffering. The second Noble Truth.

**Tara**: A female Buddha typically associated with Buddhist tantra practice as preserved in Tibetan Buddhism. She is the "mother of liberation", and represents the virtues of success in work and achievements

**Theravada**: Sthaviravada Way of the elders. A principal school of Buddhism, established in Sri Lanka and South East Asia. Also found in the West.

**Three Jewels**: The three things that Buddhists take refuge in, and look towards for guidance, in the process known as taking refuge. They are: Buddha (The Enlightened or Awakened One who, depending on one's interpretation, can mean the Historical Buddha, Shakyamuni, or the Buddha nature or ideal within all beings; Dharma (The Teaching; which is the Teachings of the Buddha. Sangha (The Community of those great people who have attained Enlightenment. so that those people(Sangha) will help you to attain Enlightenment

**Thupa/Cetiya**: Stupa Reliquary (including pagodas).

**Tipitaka**, Tripitaka: Three baskets. A threefold collection of texts (Vinaya, Sutta, Abhidamma).

**Tiratana**, Triratna: The triple refuge. Buddha, the Dharmma and the Sangha. Another way of referring to the three jewels.

**Trijang Rinpoche** (CE 1901-1981): One of the foremost Tibetan Buddhist masters of our time, His Holiness Kyabje Trijang Rinpoche was the Fourteenth Dalai Lama's philosophical assistant and later his personal junior tutor for more than forty years. A direct disciple of the great Pabongka Rinpoche, Trijang Rinpoche edited Pabongka Rinpoche's Liberation in the Palm of Your Hand – one of the most-studied Lam-Rim texts in the Gelugpa lineage.

**Tulku** (Tibetan) No Pali or Sanskrit words: Reincarnated Lama.

**Ullambana**: Celebration of the ritual of saving the deceased from torments after death.

**Upaya** No Sanskrit word: Any skilful means, eg meditation on loving kindness, to overcome anger.

**Upekkha**, Upeksa: Equanimity; evenness of mind.

**Vasubhandu**: Buddhist scholar of the fifth century who brought a new school of Buddhism to China

**Vedana** No Sanskrit word: Feeling. The second of the Five Khandhas.

**Vihara** No Sanskrit word: Dwelling place; monastery.

**Vinaya** No Sanskrit word: The rules of discipline of monastic life.

**Vinaya Pitaka** No Sanskrit word: The first of the three collections of the canon of basic scripture, containing mostly the discipline for monks and nuns, with many stories and some teachings.

**Vinnana**, Vijnana: Consciousness. The fifth of the Five Khandhas.

**Vipassana**, Vipashyana: Insight into the true nature of things. A particular form of meditation (see Samatha).

**Viriya**, Virya: Energy; exertion.

**Visakha Puja**: Marking of the birth, enlightenment and death (attainment of Nirvana) of Lord Buddha.

**Wesak**, or Vesak (Sinhalese) Wesak: Buddha Day. Holiest of Buddhist holy days. It is a public holiday in some countries. Name of a festival and a month. On the full moon of Wesak (in May or June), the birth, Enlightenment and passing away of the Buddha took place, although some schools celebrate only the birth at this time, eg Zen.

**Wheel of Dharma** or the Wheel of the Teaching: The translation of the Sanskrit word, "Dharma cakra" (dharma-chakra). Similar to the wheel of a cart that keeps revolving, it symbolizes the Buddha's teaching as it continues to be spread widely and endlessly. The eight spokes of the wheel represent the Noble Eightfold Path

**Zazen** (Japanese) No Pali or Sanskrit words: Meditation while seated, as in Zen Buddhism.

**Zen** (Japanese) No Pali or Sanskrit words: Meditation. Derived from the Sanskrit 'dhyana'. A school of Mahayana Buddhism that developed in China and Japan.



# CHRISTIAN GLOSSARY

✝ Unlike the other five world faiths included in this glossary, most of the terms given below are in English and will be familiar to many people. The historic languages of the Christian scriptures are Hebrew, Greek and Latin. The Old Testament was written largely in Hebrew, with some texts in Aramaic and Greek (Apocrypha). The New Testament is written entirely in Greek. Latin became increasingly the language of the Western Church from the 5th century AD when the Bible was translated into Latin. In this glossary we have noted the common feast days of the saints referred to in the text as an aid to collective worship and classwork.

**PREFERRED FORM MAIN VARIANTS EXPLANATION** The preferred or most frequently used term is in bold.

**Absolution** The pronouncement by a priest of the forgiveness of sins.

**AD** Anno Domini In the Year of our Lord. The Christian calendar dates from the estimated date of the birth of Jesus Christ.

**Advent** Coming. The period beginning on the fourth Sunday before Christmas (40 days before Christmas in the Eastern Orthodox tradition). A time of spiritual preparation for Christmas. Advent begins on the Sunday nearest November 30 and is the beginning of the Christian worship year. Advent is observed with the lighting of advent candles, display of wreaths, and special ceremonies. Advent also anticipates the coming again to earth of Jesus Christ. The season continues until December 24.

**Agape** The love of God. New Testament word used for the common meal of Christians; a Love Feast.

**All Hallows' Eve** (October 31<sup>st</sup>) celebration of mystery combining prayers and merriment involving children and families. It is a prelude to All Saint's Day.

**All Saints' Day** (November 1<sup>st</sup>) day for honouring saints, known and unknown. In general, saints are persons with reputation for unusual lives of holiness and devotion to God or who were martyred for their faith. A Holy Day of Obligation in the Roman Catholic Church where saints have special formal status.

**All Souls Day** (November 2<sup>nd</sup>) Day of prayers of remembrance and intercession for the dead. Prayers of the faithful are seen as helping to cleanse the souls for the vision of God in heaven.

**Altar** Communion Table Holy Table Table used for Eucharist, Mass, Lord's Supper. Some denominations refer to it as Holy Table or Communion Table.

**Amen** literally means 'may this be true' or 'so be it' - used to complete a prayer.

**Anglican** Churches in full communion with the See of Canterbury. Their origins and traditions are linked to the Church of England, and are part of the Anglican Communion.

**Annunciation of the Blessed Virgin Mary** (March 25<sup>th</sup>) celebration of Gabriel announcing to the Virgin Mary the coming birth of Jesus as the Incarnation of Creator God.

**Apocalyptic** (i) Revelatory, of God's present purposes and of the end of the world. (ii) Used of a literary genre, eg the Book of Revelation.

**Apocrypha** Books of the Old Testament that are in the Greek but not the Hebrew Canon. Some Churches recognise the Apocrypha as part of the Old Testament Canon.

**Apocryphal New Testament** A modern title for various early Christian books which are non-canonical.

**Apostle** One who was sent out by Jesus Christ to preach the Gospel.

**Archbishop** a senior bishop. The Archbishop of Canterbury is the leader of the Church of England.

**Ascension of Jesus** Recognition of the departure of Jesus from earth after the resurrection. It is perhaps the earliest observed celebration in Christianity. It is observed with worship including prayers and music. The event, 40 days after the Resurrection, when Jesus 'ascended into heaven' (see Luke 24 and Acts 1 ).

**Ash Wednesday** The first day of Lent. In some Churches, penitents receive the sign of the cross in ashes on their foreheads.

**Assumption of the Blessed Virgin Mary (August 15<sup>th</sup>)** Catholic observance commemorating the belief that the Blessed Virgin Mary was assumed body and soul into heaven at the end of her earthly life.

**Atonement** Reconciliation between God and humanity; restoring a relationship broken by sin; the belief that Jesus saved the world from its sin, through His death.

**Baptism** Rite of initiation involving immersion in, or sprinkling or pouring of, water.

**Baptist** (i) A member of the Baptist Church, which grew out of the Anabaptist movement during the 16<sup>th</sup> century Reformation. (ii) A Christian who practises Believer's Baptism.

**Baptism of Jesus** Commemoration of the beginning of the public ministry of Jesus.

**Baptistry** (i) Building or pool used for baptism, particularly by immersion. (ii) Part of a church, where baptism takes place.

**BC** Before Christ Period of history before the estimated birth of Jesus Christ.

**Beheading of John the Baptist (29<sup>th</sup> August)** Remembrance of the death of John who is known for preparing the people so they would recognize Jesus as the Messiah.

**Believer's Baptism** The baptism of people who are old enough to understand the meaning of the rite.

**Benediction** Blessing at the end of worship. Also, late afternoon or evening service including the blessing of the congregation with the consecrated host (usually in a Roman Catholic context).

**Bible** Literally 'book', this is the name given to the holy scriptures of the Christian faith. Jews sometimes use the name to refer to their scriptures too.

**Blessed** When God's favour is given to an object or person.

**Blessed Sacrament** Bread and wine which have been consecrated and set aside for future use (usually in the Roman Catholic Church).

**Blessing of the Animals** Observance of showing respect for the domestic animals that mean much to people. Observed on various dates - especially related to St. Francis.

**Candlemas (2<sup>nd</sup> February)** Presentation of Christ in the Temple, Purification

of the Blessed Virgin Mary Christian celebration of the presentation of young Jesus in the temple to the aged Simeon. New beginnings are recognized. Candles are lighted.

**Canon** Scripture The accepted books of the Bible. The list varies between denominations.

**Catechism** Religious teaching: in particular instruction by question and answer given to a person being prepared for Christian baptism.

**Catholic** (i) Universal. (ii) Often used as an abbreviation for Roman Catholic.

**Chapel** A place of worship. Some Christians use the word instead of church.

**Charismatic** A modern movement within the Church, emphasising spiritual gifts, such as healing or speaking with tongues.

**Chrismation** (i) The Orthodox second sacrament of initiation by anointing with chrism (a special oil). Performed at the same time as baptism. (ii) Anointing with oil, eg healing or coronation.

**Christ** Messiah The anointed one. Messiah is used in the Jewish tradition to refer to the expected leader sent by God, who will bring salvation to God's people. Jesus' followers applied this title to him, and its Greek equivalent, Christ, is the source of the words Christian and Christianity.

**Christening** Christian ceremony where a person is baptized and received into the Church.

**Christian** Someone who follows the teaching of Jesus Christ.

**Christingle** A celebration of carols and candlelight from Scandinavia where St. Lucia is remembered.

**Christ the King** Celebration of the pre-eminence of Jesus over all earthly authorities.

**Christmas** Festival commemorating the birth of Jesus Christ (25 December, in most Churches).

**Christmas Eve** Celebration of the arrival of Mary and Joseph in Bethlehem for the birth of Jesus. It is observed with worship, candle lighting, manger scenes and festive meals.

**Christmas Fast** Orthodox Christian fasting period in preparation for the celebration of the Nativity of Jesus Christ.

**Church** (i) The whole community of Christians. (ii) The building in which Christians worship. (iii) A particular denomination.

**Circumcision of Jesus** Christian recognition of its Jewish foundations. The infant Jesus was brought to the Temple for the ritual act of circumcision.

**Clean Monday** Orthodox Christian first day of Lent.

**Codex** A manuscript written in book form, rather than as a scroll.

**Commandment** A law, especially one of the ten laws of Moses in the Old Testament

**Communion** Literally means 'common sharing'

**Communion Service** Also known as Holy Communion, the Eucharist, Mass, the Lord's Supper and Breaking of Bread. A Christian church service where the bread and wine are shared.

**Confession** To admit a fault or one's sins.

**Confirmation.** Rite of admission into full membership of the Christian community.

**Congregation** People who have come together to worship.

**Consecration** An act whereby a building or person is set apart for sacred uses and responsibilities.

**Contemplation** The act of thinking deeply and quietly.

**Convert** Someone who changes their religion.

**Covenant** An agreement between God and his people. They promise to serve him; he promises to protect them.

**Conversion/Confession of St Peter** Christian recognition of the classic words of St Peter who responded to a question by Jesus and described him as the long awaited messiah.

**Conversion of St Paul** Christian observance of the experience of the Paul when he was confronted by a vision of Jesus while on his way to persecute Christians and became a leading presenter of Jesus. Observed at worship services.

**Confession** Contrition; penance. (i) One of seven sacraments observed by some Churches whose priest confidentially hears a person's confession. (ii) An admission, by a Christian, of wrong-doing. (iii) A particular official statement (or profession) of faith.

**Congregationalist** Member of a Christian body which believes that each local church is independent and self-governing under the authority of Christ.

**Consubstantiation** Doctrine of the Eucharist associated with Luther, which holds that after consecration, the substances of the Body and Blood of Jesus Christ and of the bread and wine co-exist in union with each other.

**Corpus Christi** Catholic celebration in recognition of the Eucharist - the Blessed Sacrament of the Body and Blood of Christ. The real presence of the body and blood of Jesus is honoured.

**Creed** Summary statement of religious beliefs, often recited in worship, especially the Apostles' and Nicene Creeds.

**Crucifixion** Roman method of executing criminals and traitors by fastening them to a cross until they died of asphyxiation; used in the case of Jesus Christ and many who opposed the Romans.

**Day of Judgement** The belief that at the end of time all people will stand before God and be judged according to how they have lived.

**Dedicate** Set aside for a religious purpose.

**Demon** Devil or evil spirit

**Denominations** Name given to the groups or Churches into which Christianity is divided.

**Devil** God's enemy; the supreme spirit of evil; a symbol of evil.

**Devotion** giving oneself up to the service of God.

**Diocese** a group of churches presided over by a bishop.

**Disciple** Literally 'one who learns' (see apostle) ; one of the followers of Jesus; someone who follows a teacher or leader.

**Dormition** (Falling asleep) of the Theotokos Orthodox Christian commemoration of the death and burial of the Virgin Mary.

**Easter** Central Christian festival which celebrates the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead. The most holy of Christian sacred days. Observances include worship services beginning at sunrise, special music, feasting, and parades.

**Ecclesia** Greek word for church

**Ecumenism** Oikoumene Movement within the Church towards co-operation

and eventual unity.

**Ecumenical** from Greek, a word meaning 'the whole inhabited world'.

**Epiphany** (6<sup>th</sup> January) Commemoration of the manifestations of the divine nature of Jesus Christ. The homage of the magi to the infant Jesus is honoured by some. For others the Baptism of Jesus is the remembered event. A season of the Christian year from the close of Christmas to the beginning of Lent.

**Episcopacy** System of Church government by bishops.

**Epistle** Letter From the Greek word for letter. Several such letters or epistles, from Christian leaders to Christian Churches or individuals, are included in the New Testament.

**Eternal** Everlasting.

**Eternity** F-- or ever without end.

**Eucharist** Thanksgiving. A service celebrating the sacrificial death and resurrection of Jesus Christ, using elements of bread and wine (see Holy Communion).

**Evangelical** Group, or church, placing particular emphasis on the Gospel and the scriptures as the sole authority in all matters of faith and conduct.

**Evangelist** A writer of one of the four New Testament Gospels; a preacher of the gospel.

**Exaltation of the Life-giving Cross** Orthodox Christian celebration of the finding by St Helena, mother of Emperor Constantine, of the Cross upon which Christ was crucified.

**Falling Asleep** (Dormition) of the Theotokos Orthodox Christian observance of the death, burial, resurrection and transfer to heaven of the Virgin Mary.

**Fast** Going without food or types of food as a religious duty or to express a belief or protect.

**Fast in honour of the Holy Mother of Lord Jesus** Orthodox Christian 14 day fasting period in preparation for the celebration of the Great Feast of the Dormition of the Virgin Mary.

**Feast of the Holy Apostles** (29<sup>th</sup> June) The martyrdom of Saint Peter and Saint Paul recognized.

**Feast of St Basil** Orthodox Christian commemoration of St Basil the Great, who wrote a Eucharist Liturgy which bears his name.

**Feast of our Lady of Guadalupe** Catholic Christian honouring of a legendary appearance of the Virgin Mary near Mexico City in 1531 C.E.

**Feast of the Theophany** Orthodox Christian Feast to recall the revelation of the Holy Trinity in the baptism of the Lord.

**Feast of the Visitation** Christian remembrance of Mary and cousin Elizabeth to whom the news of Jesus' coming was given.

**Festival** An enjoyable celebration (usually annually)

**Font** Receptacle to hold water used in baptism.

**Free Churches** Non-conformist denominations, free from state control (used of 20 Churches).

**Friar** 'Brother'; member of a religious group which lives and works among the people rather than staying in a monastery.

**Gabriel** One of God's chief angels.

**Good Friday** The Friday in Holy Week. Commemorates the day Jesus died on the cross.

**Gospel** Evangel (i) Good news (of salvation in Jesus Christ). (ii) An account of Jesus' life and work.

**Grace** (i) The freely given and unmerited favour of God's love for humanity. (ii) Blessing. (iii) Prayer of thanks before or after meals.

**Heaven** The place, or state, in which souls will be united with God after death.

**Hell** The place, or state, in which souls will be separated from God after death.

**Heretic** Someone who holds views which are rejected by the majority.

**Holy Communion** Central liturgical service observed by most Churches (see Eucharist, Mass, Lord's Supper, Liturgy). Recalls the last meal of Jesus, and celebrates his sacrificial and saving death.

**Holy Cross Day** Day of recognition for the Cross on which Jesus was crucified as a central symbol of the Christian religion.

**Holy Family of Jesus, Mary, Joseph** Catholic Christian celebration of the love between the family of Jesus.

**Holy Innocents Day** (28<sup>th</sup> December) Day of solemn memory of male children killed by King Herod in the attempt to destroy Jesus.

**Holy Pascha** Orthodox Christian feast day of the resurrection of Lord Jesus Christ.

**Holy Thursday** Christian observance of the final meal that Jesus observed with his disciples. It is usually observed with the Sacrament of Holy Communion or a special Mass celebrating the institution of the Eucharist.

**Holy Saturday** Christian observance of the Saturday before Easter - a time of meditation on the mystery of Jesus Christ.

**Holy Spirit** The third person of the Holy Trinity. Active as divine presence and power in the world, and in dwelling in believers to make them like Christ and empower them to do God's will.

**Holy Week** The week before Easter, when Christians recall the last week of Jesus' life on Earth.

**Hymn** A religious poem set to music and sung during worship.

**Icon/ikon** Painting or mosaic of Jesus Christ, the Virgin Mary, a saint, or a Church feast. Used as an aid to devotion, usually in the Orthodox tradition.

**Iconostasis** Screen, covered with icons, used in Eastern Orthodox churches to separate the sanctuary from the nave.

**Immaculate Conception** (8<sup>th</sup> December) Catholic Christian day of celebrating the belief that Mary, mother of Jesus, was preserved from original sin all of her life. A day of obligation and required church attendance.

**Immaculate Heart of Mary** Catholic Christian honouring of Mary, mother of Jesus.

**Immersion** Being completely covered by water.

**Immortal** A person or a god who lives forever.

**Immortality** Never dying.

**Incarnation** The doctrine that God took human form in Jesus Christ. It is also the belief that God in Christ is active in the Church and in the world.

**Incense** Something that gives a sweet smell when burnt.

**Infallible** Literally 'without error'

**Jesus Christ** The central figure of Christian history and devotion. The second person of the Trinity.

**Justification by Faith** The doctrine that God forgives ('treats as just') those who repent and believe in Jesus Christ.

**Kerygma** The central message about Jesus proclaimed by the early Christians.

**Kyrie** (Greek) O Lord. Addressed to Jesus, as in 'Kyrie eleison' (Lord have mercy).

**Lammas** First fruits celebration observed by placing bread baked from first harvest on the altar. From the Celtic Christian tradition. September 1 in northern hemisphere; February 1 in southern hemisphere.

**Lazarus Saturday** Orthodox Christian celebration of the resurrection of Lazarus by Jesus, celebrated on the eve of Palm Sunday; revealing that Jesus is "the resurrection and life" of all mankind..

**Lectern** Stand supporting the Bible, often in the shape of an eagle.

**Lectionary** A list of scriptural passages for systematic reading throughout the year.

**Lent** Penitential season. The 40 days leading up to Easter. A time of intense devotion, it is observed by fasting, frequent worship and acts of charity. The season begins on Ash Wednesday.

**Liturgy** (i) Service of worship according to a prescribed ritual such as Evensong or Eucharist. (ii) Term used in the Orthodox Church for the Eucharist.

**Logos** Word. Pre-existent Word of God incarnate as Jesus Christ.

**Lord** Title used for Jesus to express his divine lordship over people, time and space.

**Lord's Prayer** The Christian prayer starting 'Our Father' taught by Jesus to his disciples.

**Lord's Supper** Alternative term for Eucharist in some Churches (predominantly Non-conformist).

**Lutheran** A major Protestant Church that receives its name from the 16th century German reformer, Martin Luther.

**Magi** The visitors from the East who came to see the child Jesus.

**Martyr** Someone who is put to death for remaining loyal to a belief.

**Martyrdom of John the Baptist** Observance to remember the beheading of John who challenged the moral life of King Herod.

**Mary, Mother of God** Catholic Christian - a celebration of the mother of Jesus.

**Mass** Term for the Eucharist, used by the Roman Catholic and other Churches.

**Maundy Thursday** The Thursday in Holy Week. Commemorates the Last Supper.

**Meatfare (Judgement) Sunday** Orthodox Christian observance, two weeks before the start of the Great Lent, preparing the faithful for the celebration of the resurrection of Christ. This is the last day for eating of meat before the Great Lent.

**Meditation** A way of calming the mind and allowing it to rest on some aspect of belief.

**Methodist** A Christian who belongs to the Methodist Church which came into existence through the work of John Wesley in the 18th century.

**Milvian Bridge Day** Day of solemn reflection on the relationship of the spiritual community and the powers of civil government. On Oct 28, 312 C.E., Emperor Constantine prevailed in a battle and proceeded to make Christianity the legal religion of the Roman Empire. For further information go to Milvian Bridge event.

**Minister** The name for a Christian servant of God, often an ordained church leader

**Ministry** Jesus' work of preaching, teaching and helping the needy.

**Missionary** Someone who tries to make other people share his or her beliefs.

**Missal** Book containing words and ceremonial directions for saying Mass.

**Monastery** Place where people who have taken special vows live as a religious community; the building where monks or nuns live.

**Monk** A man who gives up marriage and family life to follow his religious faith. Monks are mainly found in the Christian and Buddhist religions.

**Most Precious Blood of Jesus** Catholic Christian veneration of the Blood of Jesus and its life-giving power.

**Mother of God** The title given to the Virgin Mary, mainly in the Orthodox and Roman Catholic Churches, to underline the Trinitarian belief that Jesus was truly God (in this context, God refers to God incarnate as seen in Jesus Christ).

**Nativity** Birth

**Nativity of Mary, the Mother of God** Christian celebration of birth of the Virgin Mary.

**Nativity of St John the Baptist** Celebration of the role of John in baptizing Jesus. Continues a pre Christian Midsummer's Day celebration. Special interest for Hispanic tradition.

**New Testament** Collection of 27 books forming the second section of the Canon of Christian Scriptures.

**Non-conformist** Protestant Christian bodies which became separated from the established Church of England in the 17th century.

**Nun** A woman who gives up marriage and family life in order to follow her religious faith. Nuns are mainly found in the Christian and Buddhist religions.

**Offering** A gift for God.

**Old Testament** That part of the Canon of Christian Scriptures which the Church shares with Judaism, comprising 39 books covering the Hebrew Canon, and in the case of certain denominations, some books of the Apocrypha.

**Ordination** In episcopal Churches, by the 'laying on of hands' on priests and deacons by a bishop. In non-episcopal Churches, by the 'laying on of hands' on ministers by other representatives of the Church.

**Orthodox** (i) The Eastern Orthodox Church consisting of national Churches (mainly Greek or Slav), including the ancient Eastern Patriarchates. They hold the common Orthodox faith, and are in communion with the Patriarchate of Constantinople. (ii) Conforming to the creeds sanctioned by the ecumenical



councils, eg Nicaea, Chalcedon: a person who accepts the traditional ways of a religion; the word means 'right teaching'.

**Orthodox Sunday** Orthodox Christian first Sunday of Lent. Restoration of icons to the church is celebrated.

**Palm Sunday** The Sunday before Easter, commemorating the entry of Jesus into Jerusalem when he was acknowledged by crowds waving palm branches. The day begins Holy Week. It is observed by worship celebrations and parades using palm branches.

**Parable** A story with a meaning or lesson.

**Paraclete** Comforter Advocate. Term used for the Holy Spirit.

**Parousia** Presence. The Second Coming or return of Jesus Christ.

**Passion** The sufferings of Jesus Christ, especially in the time leading up to his crucifixion.

**Pater Noster** The Latin words for 'Our Father'. It refers to the Lord's Prayer, which begins with these words.

**Patriarch** Title for principal Eastern Orthodox bishops. Also used for early Israelite leaders such as Abraham, Isaac, Jacob.

**Patron saint** Saint who guards and looks after a country or certain people

**Pentecost** Whitsun The Greek name for the Jewish Festival of Weeks, or Shavuot, which comes seven weeks ('fifty days') after Passover. On the day of this feast, the followers of Jesus received the gift of the Holy Spirit in the forms of tongues of fire and rushing wind. It is a traditional day for baptism and confirmation of new Christians.

**Pentecostalist** A Christian who belongs to a Church that emphasises certain gifts which were granted to the first believers on the Day of Pentecost (such as the power to heal the sick and speak in tongues).

**Persecution** Making people suffer, or even die, for their beliefs.

**Pilgrimage** A journey for a religious purpose, usually to a special place where some meaningful event took place.

**Pope** The Bishop of Rome, head of the Roman Catholic Church.

**Precious Blood of Jesus** Catholic veneration of the life giving power of the blood of Jesus.

**Presbyterian** A member of a Church that is governed by elders or 'presbyters'; the national Church of Scotland.

**Presentation of Jesus in the temple** (2nd February) Remembrance of the infant Jesus being brought to the temple in Jerusalem. His Godly presence was recognized. Celebrated at worship services.

**Presentation of the Blessed Virgin Mary** (21st November) Catholic Christian honouring of Mary who was brought to the temple at age 3 for education.

**Priest** Someone who has been ordained to perform, religious ceremonies.

**Prophet** A person who speaks the word of God, sometimes foretelling the future, sometimes telling people how to live; person who preaches what has been revealed to him (usually by God) ;someone sent by God to speak God's message.

**Prostrate** To lie flat on the ground.

**Protestant** That part of the Church which became distinct from the Roman Catholic and Orthodox Churches when their members professed (or 'protested' - hence Protestant) the centrality of the Bible and other beliefs.

Members affirm that the Bible, under the guidance of the Holy Spirit, is the ultimate authority for Christian teaching.

**Pulpit** An elevated platform from which sermons are preached.

**Purgatory** In some traditions, a condition or state in which good souls receive spiritual cleansing after death, in preparation for heaven.

**Quaker** A member of the Religious Society of Friends, established through the work of George Fox in the 17th century.

**Rebirth** The start of a new life.

**Recite** Say aloud from memory

**Reconciliation** Confession (i) Sacrament of the (Roman) Catholic Church, consisting of Contrition, Confession of sins, and Absolution. (ii) The human process of reconciling Christians with one another.

**Redemption** Derived from the practice of paying the price of a slave's freedom; and so, the work of Jesus Christ in setting people free through his death.

**Reformation** A 16th century reform movement that led to the formation of Protestant Churches. It emphasised the need to recover the initial beliefs and practices of the Church.

**Reformation Day** Protestant Christian anniversary of their tradition and its emphasis on the place of the Bible and religious freedom. On October 31, 1517 C.E. Martin Luther posted a belief statement on Wittenberg Church door.

**Repent** Ask for forgiveness for sin.

**Repentance** Sorrow for sins, and the determination to try to do better.

**Representative** A person who speaks on behalf of another person.

**Resolution** Something you have firmly decided

**Respect** To show or feel that you think someone is very important.

**Resurrection** (i) The rising from the dead of Jesus Christ on the third day after the crucifixion. (ii) The rising from the dead of believers at the Last Day. (iii) The new, or risen, life of Christians.

**Rogation Sunday** Christian occasion to ask God to bless the land for growing crops and to also ask forgiveness of sins.

**Roman Catholic** That part of the Church owing loyalty to the Bishop of Rome, as distinct from Orthodox and Protestant Churches.

**Sacrament** An outward sign of an inward blessing, as in baptism or the Eucharist.

**Sacred Heart** Catholic occasion to pay homage to Christ's all encompassing love for humanity. Solemn worship is observed.

**Saints** People whose Christian lives have been especially good.

**Saint Andrew's Day** Observance of the coming of Christianity to the area now known as Scotland. The martyrdom of St Andrew is remembered as the season of Advent is about to begin.

**Saint Basil** (1<sup>st</sup> January) of Caesarea, also called 'Saint Basil the Great' was the Bishop of Caesarea in Cappadocia Asia Minor (modern-day Turkey). He was a very influential 4th century Christian theologian.

**Saint Benedict Day** (11<sup>th</sup> July) Catholic Christian recognition of the father of the The Benedictine Order. It was the first Order of the Western Church

Monastic tradition and lived by the Benedictine Rule.

**Saint Blaize Day** Christian, primarily Catholic and Orthodox, honoured of a 4th century saint by blessing the throats of believers.

**Saint Brigid of Kildare** Recognition of Brigid who displayed unusual compassion. She was brought up as a Druid and became Christian.

**Saint Columba of Iona** Recognition of Columba who began the famous community of Iona off the coast of Scotland in 563.

**Saint David of Wales** (1<sup>st</sup> March) Celtic Christian saint known for his wisdom and missionary work.

**Saint Francis Day** (4<sup>th</sup> October) Recognition of service to people and appreciation of the natural world, as practised by St Francis and the Franciscan Monastic Order which he founded.

**Saint George Day** (23<sup>rd</sup> April) Remembrance of a person who, in the 4th century, was a martyr and became an ideal of martial valour and selflessness. Legend of killing a dragon is connected with this patron saint of England.

**Saint James Day** (25<sup>th</sup> July) Recognition of the martyrdom of the Apostle James the Great in 44 C.E.

**Saint John the Baptist** (24<sup>th</sup> June) Remembrance of the birth of St. John the Baptist who announced the coming of Jesus.

**Saint John the Evangelist** (27<sup>th</sup> December) Remembrance of the birth of St. John the Evangelist of the early church.

**Saint Joseph's Day** (19<sup>th</sup> March) Remembrance of Joseph, husband of Mary the mother of Jesus.

**Saint Luke's Day** (18<sup>th</sup> October) Remembrance of Luke, disciple of Jesus.

**Saint Matthew Day** (21<sup>st</sup> September) remembrance Matthew - apostle, evangelist and martyr of the first century.

**Saint Michael and All Angels** (29<sup>th</sup> September) Celebration of angels as companions who help fight off the power of evil and who are present at the hour of death.

**Saint Nicholas Day** (6<sup>th</sup> December) Celebration of the birth of Saint Nicholas, patron saint of children and role model for gift giving. Many churches named for this saint who is also the Dutch version of Santa Claus.

**Saint Patrick's Day** (17<sup>th</sup> March) Celebration of Patrick who brought Christianity to Ireland in early days of the faith.

**Saint Peter Day** (29<sup>th</sup> June) Honouring of the disciple chosen by Jesus to give leadership to the church.

**Saint Philip the Apostle & St James the Less** (3<sup>rd</sup> May) Remembrance of two disciples of Jesus.

**Saint Stephen's Day** (26<sup>th</sup> December) Remembrance of St Stephen, the first Christian martyr.

**Saint Thomas Day** (3<sup>rd</sup> July) Remembrance of the Apostle of Jesus who travelled east toward India and is now the Patron Saint of India and Pakistan.

**Saint Valentine's Day** (14<sup>th</sup> February) Celebration of the love of God presented in Jesus and in the lives of Christian believers. St Valentine was a 3rd century martyr. This day is widely observed as a secular celebration of love.

**Salvation Army** A Christian evangelical church founded by William Booth in the nineteenth century CE.

**Salvationist** A member of the Salvation Army founded by William and Catherine Booth in the 19th century.

**Sanctification** The process by which a believer is made holy, to become like Jesus Christ.

**Scriptures** Special books from which people learn about their religion.

**Shrine** A special place, often containing a symbol, image, or relic, as a focus for worship.

**Shrove Tuesday** Carnival day on the eve of Ash Wednesday which begins Lent, a time of fasting and devotions. Pancakes are often served. It is also known as Fat Tuesday in some places.

**Sin** (i) Act of rebellion or disobedience against the known will of God. (ii) An assessment of the human condition as disordered and in need of transformation.

**Synoptic** Having a common viewpoint. It is applied to the presentation of Jesus' life in the first three gospels of Matthew, Mark and Luke in contrast with that given in the Gospel of John.

**Tabernacle** (i) A receptacle for the Blessed Sacrament, not immediately consumed but set aside or 'reserved' (mainly in Roman Catholic and Eastern Orthodox Churches). The presence of the consecrated elements is usually signalled by a continuously burning light. (ii) Term used by some denominations of their building.

**Theophany (Feast of)** Orthodox Christian celebration of the Baptism of Jesus, at which time the Trinity was revealed to the world.

**Transfiguration of Jesus** Commemoration of the experience on Mt Tabor when Jesus' physical appearance became brilliant as his connection with traditional Jewish holy figures became evident to the disciples.

**Transubstantiation** Roman Catholic doctrine concerning the Mass, defined at the Lateran Council of 1215, and confirmed at the Council of Trent in 1551. This states that in the Eucharist, at the words of consecration, the substance of the bread and wine becomes the substance of the Body and Blood of Jesus Christ, and that he is thus present on the altar.

**Trinity** Three persons in one God; doctrine of the threefold nature of God - Father, Son and Holy Spirit.

**Trinity Sunday** Christians honour the belief in one God with a threefold nature.

**Triodion** Orthodox Christian time period leading up to Lent. The liturgy involves hymns, odes and scriptures.

**Twelfth Night** Observance of the close of Christmastide.

**Unction** Sacrament of the Sick The anointing with oil of a sick or dying person.

**United Reformed Church** A Church formed by the union of English Congregationalists with the Presbyterian Church of England, and subsequently the Reformed Association of the Churches of Christ.

**Watch Night** Occasion to thank God for bringing people safely through another year.

**Week of Prayer for Christian Unity** Observance with prayer for the restoration of unity between the churches of the faith.

**Whitsunday** Alternate name for Pentecost, the Christian celebration of the coming of the Holy Spirit on the community of the faithful. White robes are

used in worship.

**Winter Lent** Orthodox Christian season of preparation for the Nativity of Christ.

**World Communion Sunday** Protestant Christian observation of the unity of Christians in celebration of the last supper of Jesus with the disciples.

**Vatican** The residence of the Pope in Rome, and the administrative centre of the Roman Catholic Church. The chief building of the Vatican is St Peter's Basilica, built on the traditional site of St Peter's tomb.

**Vicar** A priest or minister in charge of a church in the Church of England.

**Virgin Birth** The doctrine of the miraculous conception of Jesus Christ by the Virgin Mary through the power of the Holy Spirit and without the agency of a human father.

**Virgin Mary** The Mother of Jesus.

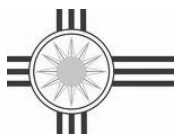
**Vocation** A special call from, or choosing by God to do certain types of work and service.

**Vulgate** Latin version of the Bible, translated by St. Jerome.

**Word (the)** To Christians this refers to Jesus Christ.

**Worship** Any action which expresses a person's love for God.

# THE CHURCH OF JESUS CHRIST OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS (COMMONLY KNOWN AS 'MORMONS') GLOSSARY



**Aaronic Priesthood** The lesser priesthood of the Church, consisting of the offices of deacon, teacher, priest, and bishop. Holders of this priesthood attend to temporal affairs of the Church (cf. Melchizedek Priesthood).

**Active in the Church** Refers to regular attendance at meetings, observance of the principles of the gospel, and acceptance of Church callings.

**Adam** The first man. Latter-day Saints view him as one of the greatest and noblest of all men.

**Adamic language** A perfect spoken and written language given by God to Adam.

**Adam-ondi-Ahman** The place (in what is now Davies' County, Missouri) where Adam gathered and blessed his posterity before his death; a locale where a future priesthood meeting will be held just previous to Christ's second coming.

**Added upon** A phrase indicating that the faithful receive additional blessings in the life to follow. Those who were faithful in premortal life had blessings "added upon" them in mortality. Those who are faithful in this life will have "glory added upon their heads for ever and ever" (Abr. 3:26).

**Administer** To perform an ordinance, such as anointing the sick with oil or saying the set prayers to bless the bread and water of the sacrament.

**Adversary** One of Satan's names

**Agency** (often called free agency) - The granted right to choose good or evil, and the responsibility for the choices made.

**Age of accountability** The age at which a child becomes personally responsible for motives, attitudes, desires, and actions. Designated by revelation to begin at eight years of age (D&C 68:25).

**Alma** The name of two Book of Mormon prophets who were father and son. The first Alma led a small band of people away from their unrighteous king so that they could worship God in the way they believed was right. Later, his son Alma persecuted the Church and tried to lead many people astray. In response to the prayers of his father, an angel of God rebuked Alma the younger, which resulted in a conversion experience similar to that of the Apostle Paul in the New Testament (Acts 9:1-22). Alma, like Paul, spent the remainder of his life preaching the gospel of Jesus Christ

**Ancestral File** A computerized system of genealogical information that links names of individuals into pedigrees, showing their ancestors and descendants.

**Ancient of Days** A term used in Daniel 7:9, identified by revelation to Joseph Smith as Adam.

**Angel, fallen** Specifically, the devil. Generally, all who followed the devil in the premortal existence.

**Angels** Literally, messengers; usually referring to messengers from God.

**Anointing(s)** The placing of a drop or two of consecrated olive oil on a person's head as part of a special blessing, under the direction of the Melchizedek Priesthood.

**Apostasy** 1. A condition of spiritual withdrawal from our Father in Heaven.  
2. A period of time when the priesthood and the gospel of Jesus Christ in its fullness were not on the earth.

**Apostle** One sent forth to serve as a special witness of Jesus Christ. There are fifteen Apostles living on the earth today. They make up the First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles of the Church.

**Apostates** Members who seriously oppose or ignore cardinal teachings of the Church, publicly or privately.

**Apostle** An office in the Melchizedek Priesthood; usually a member of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles.

**Apostolic Church** The Church presided over by the Twelve Apostles following the resurrection and ascension of Jesus Christ.

**Area** A geographical ecclesiastical unit of the Church consisting of several regions and presided over by a president, who is a General Authority.

**Archives** A general description for the record-keeping facilities of the Church in Salt Lake City. The archives hold a wide variety of records, including Church membership information, historical accounts, and the largest collection of genealogical data in the world.

**Articles of Faith** Thirteen concise statements of LDS belief written by Joseph Smith in the Wentworth Letter.

**Assistants to the twelve** Persons who at one time in the Church were specifically called to be General Authorities to assist the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles.

**Atonement** The suffering and death of Jesus Christ, through which resurrection is provided to all mortals and eternal life is offered to those who have faith in Christ and repent of their sins.

**Authority** Duly conferred priesthood power or delegated responsibility associated with position or function.

**Auxiliary organizations** The Primary (children), Relief Society (adult women), Sunday School, and Young Men and Young Women organizations of the Church. Auxiliary organizations exist primarily to assist the priesthood government of the Church.

**Babylon** A term symbolic of worldliness.

**Baptism for the dead** The practice of vicarious baptism for the deceased as practiced in New Testament times (1 Corinthians 15:29). This ordinance is performed in temples of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

**Bear testimony** To express one's personal convictions of the truthfulness of the gospel of Jesus Christ.

**Bear the priesthood** To possess or hold duly conferred priesthood authority.

**Beehive symbol** A logo representing industry and harmony, appearing frequently on objects associated with the LDS Church and Utah.

**Benjamin** A Book of Mormon king and prophet who worked alongside his people and refused to tax them for his support. He taught the value of service to others as well as the importance of the Atonement of Jesus Christ.

**Beyond the veil** A metaphorical expression for the spirit world or for life after death.

**Bible** One of the volumes of scripture included in the standard works of the Church. The Bible is divided into two main books: the Old Testament, which contains a history of God's people before the birth of Jesus Christ, and the New Testament, which is a record of the life and teachings of Jesus Christ and His disciples. Each of these books is broken up into smaller books, which are divided into chapters and verses. A reference from the Bible may look like this: Matthew 7:21

**Bind on earth, bind in heaven** Through the priesthood sealing power, to make an ordinance performed on earth valid throughout eternity.

**Bishop** A priesthood office whose bearer has been ordained and set apart to preside over a ward. A Bishop can be understood as the president of the Ward, though this terminology is not frequently used. Though this person remains theologically uneducated, and is not paid, the role and office of the LDS bishop is essentially that of a priest, or pastor in a Christian church. The office of bishop is held by a member of the Melchizedek priesthood, though oddly the office of bishop is understood to be an office of the lower Aaronic priesthood. The office of "bishop" is also the first office of the "high priesthood," that is to say that a bishop is ordained a "High Priest."

**Bishop's court** A term used until recent years to indicate a disciplinary council conducted by a bishop.

**Bishopric** A bishop and his two counsellors.

**Board (general, auxiliary)** A small group of Church members called to help leaders of Church auxiliary organizations, such as Relief Society or Sunday School, at both the stake and the general Church administrative levels.

**Blood atonement** The doctrine that the shedding of blood atones for sin.

**BOM** Abbreviation for Book of Mormon This is probably the best known of the standard works, or LDS holy books. This is the one that the missionaries will deliver to your door absolutely free of charge. Joseph Smith was led to the hill of Cumorah.

**Book of Abraham** Writings of Abraham, revealed to Joseph Smith. The Book of Abraham is one of the books in the Pearl of Great Price.

**Book of Commandments** The earliest published collection of revelations to Joseph Smith; a predecessor to the Doctrine and Covenants.

**Book of Mormon** An account of ancient inhabitants of the Western Hemisphere recorded on gold plates and translated by Joseph Smith. The record contains both a history of the people and the fullness of the everlasting gospel as revealed by the Savoir to the ancient inhabitants.

**Book of Moses** A record from the creation of the world and mankind to the flood at Noah's time, revealed to Joseph Smith while he was translating the Bible. Selections from the Book of Moses are now part of the Pearl of Great Price.

**Book of remembrance** (1) A record begun by Adam and his immediate posterity; (2) a personal book containing genealogy and significant family history.

**Born in the covenant** All children born to a couple after they have been married (sealed) in a temple.

**Branch** Generally the smallest organized congregation of Latter-day Saints.

**Brass plates** A record spoken of in the Book of Mormon, which was similar to the Old Testament, written on plates of brass, containing many writings of the



prophets (1 Ne. 5:10-16); brought by Lehi and his family to the Western Hemisphere.

**Brethren** (1) All male members of the Church; (2) "The Brethren," a designation of the General Authorities of the Church.

**Brother** A male member of the Church.

**Burning in the bosom** A metaphorical description of the feeling that sometimes attends the enveloping Spirit of the Lord, particularly when one understands God's words through the influence of the Holy Ghost (Luke 24:32; D&C 9:3-8).

**Callings** Invitations to accept an office or assignment; offices or assignments themselves.

**Celestial kingdom** The highest of three degrees of glory in the kingdom of heaven.

**Centre place of Zion** The "centre place," Independence, Missouri, the future site of the City of Zion (the New Jerusalem) and the temple (D&C 57:3); sometimes incorrectly called "centre stake."

**Chapel** The room or hall in a Church meetinghouse used for worship services.

**Charity** Love and compassion; the pure love of Christ.

**Chastity, Law of** The Lord's law of personal purity, which is that there must be no sexual intimacy except between a man and a woman who are legally and lawfully married.

**Child of God** The Latter-day Saint belief that all persons are spirit children of God in the premortal existence and that this parent-child relationship continues on this earth and through eternity.

**Children's Friend** The Church's children's magazine, 1902-1970.

**Chosen people** Specifically those selected by God for special responsibilities, often requiring service and sacrifice; participants in the covenant of the gospel.

**Church News** A weekly news supplement published by the Deseret News, the Church-owned newspaper.

**The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints** The official name of the Church.

**Church of the Firstborn** Those who are exalted or assured of receiving exaltation.

**Clergy** A group who leads or performs certain responsibilities within a religious organization.

**Collection of fast offerings** The collection of voluntary offerings on fast day, usually the first Sunday of each month.

**Commandment** Instructions given by God to His children to prepare them for eternal life in the world to come.

**Comforter** The scriptures speak of two Comforters. The First Comforter is the Holy Ghost. The Second Comforter is Jesus Christ (John 14:16-23).

**Common consent** The principle whereby Church members vote to sustain and approve those called to serve in the Church and decisions made by leaders.

**Common judge** The bishop of each ward, who has the responsibility to judge the spiritual and temporal condition of members of his ward. The stake

president of each stake serves as a common judge for all members of his stake.

**Companion, missionary** A missionary's partner. Missionaries in the Church always work in pairs.

**Compassionate service** Aid or comfort rendered to others, in particular by members of the Relief Society.

**Conference, General** A bi-annual world conference of the Church, held in April and October, where members gather for five two-hour sessions to listen to instruction from Church leaders and at which official Church business is conducted. General conference is broadcast via satellite from the Conference Centre at Church headquarters in Salt Lake City, Utah.

**Conference reports** The published proceedings of the general conferences of the Church.

**Confirmation** The bestowal of the gift of the Holy Ghost to newly baptized members by holders of the Melchizedek Priesthood; also official recognition of Church membership.

**Consecrate** To set apart or dedicate for a sacred purpose.

**Convert** One who has accepted the gospel of Jesus Christ through baptism and confirmation into the Church, but who was not raised in the faith.

**Consecration, law of** A divine principle whereby men and women voluntarily dedicate their time, talents, and material wealth to the establishment and building up of God's kingdom.

**Convert (noun)** A person who has chosen to join The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints by being baptized and confirmed.

**Correlation** A process by which all programs of the Church are identified and placed in proper relationship to each other: teachings, organizations, programs, meetings, and instructional materials.

**Council in heaven** The meeting in the premortal life of the Godhead and spirits designated for this earth, in which the plan of salvation was presented.

**Counsellor** A person called to serve as an adviser, assistant, and occasional substitute for an officer or leader in the Church.

**Court (Church)** A term formerly used to mean a Church disciplinary council.

**Covenant** A binding and solemn agreement, contract, or promise between God and a person or group of persons upon which eternal blessings are based.

**Crickets (Mormon)** A type of cricket that threatened the crops of early Mormon pioneers. The crops were saved when large flocks of seagulls came and devoured the crickets.

**CTR:** This is a common inscription found on rings worn by young adults in the LDS church, it stands for: Choose The Right. The idea is that this ring is supposed to remind the wearer to Chose the Right (thing to do) in a given situation.

**Cultural Hall** The multi-purpose section of a meetinghouse, generally located at the centre of the building. It is used for large meetings other than sacrament meeting, for cultural, social, and sport events.

**Cumorah** (1) A hill in which the prophet Mormon concealed sacred records before the annihilation of his people; (2) the hill in New York State, near the town of Palmyra, where Joseph Smith unearthed the gold plates from which he translated the Book of Mormon.

**D&C:** Doctrine And Covenants. A holy book, believed to be as correct and holy as either the bible or the BOM. It is made up of a collection of revelations which Joseph Smith had during his life, outlining the structure of the church, directions for purchasing various plots of land, various locations of Zion, Code of conduct, dietary restrictions, and other various matters. This is the book into which any new revelations received by the Prophet which are deemed important are added. OD are also contained in this book.

**Damnation** (1) The opposite of salvation; (2) to be stopped in one's spiritual progress; (3) the suffering of various degrees of penalty at the final judgment by those who have not accepted the gospel of Jesus Christ and repented of their sins.

**Danites** A small and briefly organized band of Mormon militia men in 1838 who became the source for anti-Mormon legends.

**Deacon** An office in the Aaronic Priesthood. A boy is normally ordained a deacon when he is 12 years of age or older. Some of a deacon's responsibilities are to pass the sacrament and collect fast offerings from the members.

**Degrees of glory** The celestial, terrestrial, and telestial kingdoms in heaven.

**Denying the Holy Ghost** (1) In general terms, rejecting a spiritual witness given by the Holy Ghost; (2) another term for blasphemy against the Holy Ghost, which is an unpardonable sin.

**Deseret** A Book of Mormon word meaning "honey bee," often used in titles of LDS institutions or by businesses in areas with concentrated LDS populations.

**Devils** Those spirits who chose to follow Lucifer in his revolt against God in the premortal existence.

**Disciplinary procedures** The process of bringing a Church member before a priesthood officer or disciplinary council to account for alleged transgressions against Church standards and to take necessary steps toward repentance.

**Discussion (missionary term)** A structured lesson on basic gospel principles presented to interested non-members.

**Disfellowshipment** A disciplinary action against a Church member that severely restricts participation in Church activity but falls short of excommunication.

**Dispensation (of the gospel, of the fullness of times)** A period of time in which priesthood authority and keys are established among mankind. The present dispensation, the last before the second coming of Christ, is called the "fullness of times."

**Distribution centres** Centrally located outlets from which Church publications and other supplies are distributed.

**District** (1) An ecclesiastical unit consisting of several branches of the Church in a geographic area where stakes are not organized; (2) a unit of organization in missions, consisting of missionaries and presided over by an experienced missionary called the district leader.

**Doctrine and Covenants** A volume of Latter-day Saint scripture containing selected revelations given to Joseph Smith and his successors in the presidency of the Church.

**Early morning seminary** LDS religion courses for high school students offered before the normal school day begins.

**Elder** An office in the Melchizedek Priesthood; a title designating a holder of this priesthood, a General Authority, or a male missionary. Elders have authority to bestow the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands and to bestow priesthood blessings.

**Elder brother** A name or title of Jesus Christ, the firstborn of all Heavenly Father's spirit children.

**Elders' quorum** A group consisting of men holding the office of elder in the Melchizedek Priesthood.

**Elohim** God the Father.

**Endowment** Ordinances of instruction and covenant performed by and for individuals in temples. It is the Main ritual performed in the temple and is all encompassing of by-proxy baptisms, by-proxy confirmations, by-proxy ornaments, by-proxy washing and anointing rituals.

**Enduring to the end** The doctrine that converted individuals must continue to show their faith through good works till the end of mortal life.

**Enoch, book of** A record kept by Enoch, yet to be revealed (D&C 107:57).

**Ensign** Since 1971, the official monthly periodical published by the Church.

**Ephraim** The son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt, and heir to the birthright. The patriarchal blessings of many Latter-day Saints declare them to be of the lineage of Ephraim.

**Eternal life** Exaltation in the highest degree of the celestial kingdom; often spoken of as "eternal lives."

**Eternal progression** Endless increase in glory and dominion.

**Eternity** A synonym for "endless" as contrasted to things of mortality.

**Evangelist** The office of patriarch in the Melchizedek Priesthood.

**Eve** The first woman. Latter-day Saints view her as one of the greatest and noblest of all women.

**Exaltation** Attainment of the highest degree of glory in the celestial kingdom.

**Excommunication** A disciplinary action against a Church member in which membership is withdrawn. Used only in extreme situations, it includes removal of an individual's name from the records of the Church. Excommunicated individuals have the opportunity to return and have their Church membership restored through the process of repentance and baptism by immersion for the remission of sins.

**Family history, genealogy** Activity in the LDS Church that involves tracing one's lineage and composing ancestral histories.

**Family History Library** The Church's repository of genealogical and historical data, the largest of its kind in the world, with branch libraries in more than 1,400 stake centres.

**Family home evening** A program in which families gather (usually on Monday evening) for family-centred spiritual training and social activities.

**Family Registry** A service provided by the Family History Department of the Church to help people who are doing research on the same family lines to cooperate and share results.

**Family Search** An automated computer system designed to simplify the task of family history research.

**Fast** To abstain from food and drink for the purpose of drawing closer to the Lord.

**Fast offerings** Donations of at least the value of meals not eaten on fast Sunday, given to the bishop for the relief of the needy.

**Fast Sunday** Usually the first Sunday of each month, on which Church members refrain from food or drink for two meals and donate the equivalent cost to the Church to assist the poor and needy. The sacrament meeting on each fast Sunday, called fast and testimony meeting, is devoted to the voluntary bearing of testimony by members.

**Fellowshipping members** The activity of encouraging established Church members to help new or inactive members to participate in Church practices.

**Firesides** Informal gatherings of Church members and friends, often in homes and usually on Sundays, that feature a speaker or program of a spiritual theme. Occasionally Churchwide firesides are held under the direction of the First Presidency.

**First Presidency** The President of the Church and his counsellors; the highest ranking quorum in the Church.

**First principles and ordinances of the gospel** Faith in Jesus Christ, repentance, baptism by immersion in water for the remission of sins, and the laying on of hands for the gift of the Holy Ghost.

**First Vision** The initial appearance of God the Father and Jesus Christ to Joseph Smith in the spring of 1820 near Palmyra, New York, marking the beginning of the restoration of the gospel.

**Following the brethren** Heeding the counsel of local and general leaders of the Church.

**Font** A large receptacle for the purpose of baptism by immersion for the remission of sins. Standard fonts are about four feet deep and six to ten feet in width and length.

**Food storage** A supply of food necessary to sustain life for a year. Church leaders encourage members, where possible, to store food, clothing, fuel, and other items in preparation for emergencies.

**Foreordination** The doctrine that individuals were called and set apart in the premortal existence to perform certain roles in mortal life, should they so choose.

**Friend, The** Since 1971, the Church periodical for children.

**Fullness of the gospel** The doctrine, ordinances, authority, and organization necessary to enable individuals to attain salvation.

**Gabriel** A person spoken of in Daniel 8:16 and Luke 1:11-19, identified as Noah by the Prophet Joseph Smith.

**Garments** Sacred ceremonial undergarments associated with temple covenants.

**Gathering of Israel** The spiritual and physical gathering of all the house of Israel in the latter days.

**General Authority** A priesthood leader over the general Church. This term can refer to prophets, apostles, and seventies.

**General Authorities** Members of the presiding lay leadership of the Church: the First Presidency, Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, Quorums of the Seventy, and Presiding Bishopric.

**Genealogy** Research to identify ancestors; family history.

**General conference** General assemblies of Church members in Salt Lake City, regularly convened every April and October. General conference is

broadcast via satellite from the Conference Centre at Church Headquarters in Salt Lake City, Utah.

**Gentile(s)** According to the context in which it is used, the following meanings are possible for Latter-day Saints: (1) one not of the lineage of Israel; (2) a non-Latter-day Saint; (3) one who is not Jewish; (4) one who is not a Lamanite.

**Godhead, the** Our Father in Heaven; His Son, Jesus Christ; and the Holy Ghost.

**Gold plates** The anciently engraved metal plates from which Joseph Smith translated the Book of Mormon.

**Gospel** The "good news" of redemption through Jesus Christ; the principles and ordinances of the plan of salvation. At the centre of His plan is the Atoning sacrifice of His son Jesus Christ, in whom alone salvation is possible. In its fullness, the gospel includes all of the commandments, principles, ordinances, and covenants whereby human beings can be forgiven of sin, overcome the world, and attain immortality and eternal life in the kingdom of God.

**Grace** Divine help given through the mercy of Jesus Christ. It is an enabling power that allows men and women to receive eternal life and exaltation after they have expended their own best efforts. It is through the grace of the Lord Jesus, made possible by his atoning sacrifice, that humankind will be raised in immortality, every person receiving his body from the grave in a condition of everlasting life. It is likewise through the grace of the Lord that individuals, through faith in the atonement of Jesus Christ and repentance of their sins, receive strength and assistance to do good works that they otherwise would not be able to maintain if left to their own means. This grace is an enabling power that allows men and women to lay hold on eternal life and exaltation after they have expended their own best efforts.

**Great and abominable church** All assemblies, congregations, or associations of people not authorized by God and that fight against God and his purposes

**Heaven** (1) The dwelling place of God; (2) any kingdom of glory.

**Helaman** A Book of Mormon prophet and military leader. He led an army of young, inexperienced warriors into battle against the Lamanites. They prevailed because of their faith in God.

**Hell** (1) The condition of misery one may feel after sinning; (2) the temporary dwelling place of the unrepentant till the judgment day.

**High council (high councillor)** A group of twelve high priests (and sometimes alternates) who help direct the affairs of a stake.

**High priest** An office in the Melchizedek Priesthood. A high priest has the right to officiate in the Church. Stake presidents, mission presidents, high councillors, bishops and their counsellors, and other leaders of the Church are ordained as high priests.

**Holy Bible** One of the volumes of scripture included in the standard works of the Church. The Bible is divided into two main books: the Old Testament, which contains a history of God's people before the birth of Jesus Christ, and the New Testament, which is a record of the life and teachings of Jesus Christ and His disciples. Each of these books is broken up into smaller books, which

are divided into chapters and verses. A reference from the Bible may look like this: Matthew 7:21

**Holy Ghost** The third member of the Godhead, a personage of Spirit.

**Homemaking** One of three areas of emphasis in the Relief Society of the Church.

**Home teaching** A Church program in which priesthood holders regularly visit assigned homes of members.

**Humility** Submissiveness to the will of God; meekness and lowliness of heart.

**Immortality** A state of endless life beyond the power of death, which is obtained following the resurrection. All mortal souls will eventually become immortal through the power of the resurrection of Jesus Christ.

**Improvement Era, The** An official publication of the Church, 1897-1970.

**Indian student placement** The practice of bringing LDS American Indian children to live in LDS homes during the school year.

**Inspiration** Divine guidance that comes through the promptings of the Holy Ghost.

**Inspired Version of the Bible** Another name for Joseph Smith's translation of the Bible.

**Institute** A program of religious instruction for young adult members of the Church. Institutes are generally located near colleges and universities, and offer a religious education program in conjunction with secular training.

**Institutes of religion** Weekday religious instruction for students attending colleges, universities, and other postsecondary schools.

**Investigator (missionary term)** A person who is interested in the Church and is receiving missionary instruction.

**Iron rod** An image from Lehi's dream in the Book of Mormon, meaning "the word of God"-suggesting straitness and security.

**Israel** (1) Members of the Church; (2) the Old Testament patriarch Jacob and his descendants.

**Jack Mormon** A member who doesn't attend meetings but who has yet to decide to send in the official removal letter to his stake president. The term originated in Missouri before the saints started their long westward trek to Salt Lake. A large group of Mormons lived in Jackson county Missouri; the other folks who lived in Jackson county didn't like the Mormons so they forced them out of Jackson county, north across the Missouri river into neighbouring county. After a few years, some of the non-Mormons who lived in Jackson County decided that they would deal fairly with the Mormons across the river. The Mormons started calling the Mormon-friendly folks in Jackson county "jack Mormons" as a sort of a term of endearment.

**Jehovah** Another name for Jesus Christ, particularly in the Old Testament.

**Joseph Smith Translation of the Bible (JST)** The translation of the Bible by Joseph Smith, begun in 1830, which resulted in his receiving many doctrinal revelations.

**Journal of Discourses** A collection of sermons by LDS leaders, 1854-1886 (26 volumes); it is not an official source for Church doctrine.

**Keys of the priesthood** The right to exercise or direct authority, perform ordinances, or to preside over a priesthood function, quorum, or Church organization.

**Kingdom of God** (1) God's dominion; (2) the Church; (3) the political government of God.

**Lamanites** (1) An Israelite people in the Book of Mormon, descendants of Joseph of Egypt through Lehi and Ishmael; (2) today, many American Indians.

**Latter-day Saint** A member of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

**Lay Clergy** Those who are ordained to minister to Church members under their responsibility, but who do not hold a Church position as a full-time profession. A member of the lay clergy is chosen from among the people, and has a full-time profession that is not connected to his religious responsibilities.

**Laying on of hands** The placing of hands by those holding priesthood authority on the head of a member to confer authority, office, calling, or blessing. (Acts 6:5-7)

**Lehi** A Book of Mormon prophet, and the father of Nephi. He received many visions from God, and was able to lead his people wisely because of them. He took his family out of Jerusalem before its destruction, and led them across the ocean to a land of promise.

**Levitical Priesthood** The lesser priesthood.

**Light of Christ** The power of Christ infused in all creation.

**Line of authority** (1) A priesthood bearer's "priesthood lineage," that is, a sequential listing of ordinations tracing one's own priesthood authority through priesthood leaders to the apostles and Jesus Christ.

**Magnifying one's calling** Measuring up to the duties to which one may be called.

**Manifesto of 1890** The pronouncement that the Church had officially ended the practice of polygamy.

**Marriage, eternal** The doctrine that the bonds of marriage may continue into the eternities if a man and a woman are sealed in a temple and continue faithful to their covenants.

**Martyrdom of Joseph and Hyrum Smith** The murder of Joseph and Hyrum Smith by a mob in Carthage, Illinois, on June 27, 1844.

**Marvellous work and a wonder** A reference to a prophecy of Isaiah (29:1-14) concerning the restoration of the gospel and the coming forth of the Book of Mormon.

**Melchizedek Priesthood** The higher priesthood, including the offices of elder, seventy, high priest, patriarch, and apostle, and focused upon the spiritual things of the gospel (cf. with Aaronic Priesthood). Originally called "the Holy Priesthood after the Order of the Son of God." But out of respect or reverence to the name of the Supreme Being, to avoid the too frequent repetition of His name, the Church in ancient days called that priesthood after Melchizedek, or the Melchizedek Priesthood (Hebrews 7:11, D&C 107:2-4). Offices of the Melchizedek Priesthood include elder, seventy, high priest, patriarch, and apostle.

**Membership record** The official certificate of membership in the Church kept at Church headquarters.



**Mercy** The compassion, forgiveness, and forbearance of God with respect to sinners, as made possible by the Atonement of Jesus Christ.

**Michael** The archangel, identified in LDS teachings as Adam.

**Millennial Star** The official publication of the Church in the United Kingdom, 1840-1970.

**Mission:** Properly speaking a “mission” is a geographic area presided over by a mission president, and tended by various missionaries. Generally, however when one refers to a “mission” they are referring to the process of going on a Mission, or serving as a missionary for the church. Going on a mission is something of a rite of passage for 18 year old Mormon boys, is something that is expected, but not required. The completion of a mission bestows upon the RM significant social status, and the failure to go on a mission entails significant social stigma. Young men going on missions will serve the church, full time, for two years, in a location that is remote from one’s home (frequently but not always overseas) and at one’s own, prepaid, expense. The missionary experience is intentionally rigorous. Missionaries receive little training (all missionaries receive 2 weeks of training at the Missionary Training Centre in Utah prior to being sent out, in addition to 6 weeks of language training if the field into which they are to be sent is in an area where the predominant language is other than a language the missionary is fluent in) and missionaries must remain, at all times, within 6 feet of a same sex mission “partner,” who is generally replaced by a different partner at 6 month intervals. During this period, the missionary spends all of his time proselytizing, working for the church in other ways, or in study. The missionary has less than one day a week off, during which the missionary must remain with his partner. There is little contact with the outside world while on a mission, phone calls to home are severely restricted, as are (though to a somewhat lesser extent) letters to home; obviously fraternizing is not possible, nor is it permitted. Young women may serve a mission if they reach age 21 and are not yet married. Mission conditions for women are identical to those for men, with the exception that young women serve for a period of 18 months instead of 24, and generally (though not always) the assignments women receive are much easier than those received by men (serving as a temple tour guide for instance instead of being primarily engaged in door to door “cold calling.”) There is also a mission for married retired couples. Generally the start of the mission will also involve the first experience a young Mormon has with the inside of a temple and its related rituals.

**Missionary** A member of the Church who is called to preach the gospel to the people of the world.

**Missionary discussions** Basic gospel lessons missionaries use to teach interested people about the Church and its doctrines.

**Missionary training centres (MTC)** Centres where formally called missionaries are instructed and trained before departure to assigned missions.

**Mormon** The Book of Mormon prophet who compiled the records of the ancient inhabitants of the Americas. Sometimes used as a nickname to refer to The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints and its members.

**Mormonism, Mormons** Unofficial terms for The Church of Jesus Christ of

Latter-day Saints and its members; members prefer to use the official name of the Church and to be referred to as Latter-day Saints.

**Mormon Tabernacle Choir** The large lay choir that broadcasts weekly from Temple Square in Salt Lake City.

**Moroni** (1) A Nephite military leader, c. 60 BC; (2) a Book of Mormon prophet, c. AD 420 who in 1827, as a resurrected being, gave Joseph Smith the gold plates from which Joseph translated the Book of Mormon. A statue of Moroni is placed atop some Mormon temples and on the hill Cumorah. He received the record of his people from his father, and after writing a final message he buried the gold plates in a hill until they could be brought forth and translated. He appeared as a resurrected being to Joseph Smith and gave him the gold plates for translation, as well as instruction pertaining to the Restoration of the gospel. He has come to symbolize the proclaiming of the gospel of Jesus Christ in latter-days to every creature.

**Mosiah** A Book of Mormon king and prophet who worked to set up a new form of government before his death, with judges who worked according to the voice of the people.

**Mother in Heaven** The teaching that spirits born on this earth have their premortal origins with a literal Heavenly Mother as well as a Heavenly Father.

**Mountain Meadows Massacre** An incident in which certain Indian and Southern Utah Mormons participated in the massacre of a wagon train of immigrants passing through the Territory of Utah, 1857.

**Mutual** The Church's auxiliary organization for youth ages twelve through eighteen, for many years called the Mutual Improvement Association, or MIA.

**Name Extraction Program** Systematic transcription of genealogical information from original vital records.

**Nephi** A Book of Mormon prophet who became the leader of his people after they reached the Americas. Out of respect for his righteous leadership, they referred to themselves as Nephites from that time on. Some later Book of Mormon prophets were named after Nephi, and had a part in creating that record, resulting in four separate books of Nephi within the Book of Mormon.

**New Era** Since 1971, the Church periodical for young people.

**New and everlasting covenant** The gospel of Jesus Christ. All covenants between God and mankind are part of the new and everlasting covenant.

**New Jerusalem** The administrative headquarters of the kingdom of God in the Western Hemisphere during Christ's millennial reign.

**Nursery** A Sunday class organized for children eighteen months of age to three years. They participate in singing, a short lesson, snacks, and playtime while their parents attend other meetings.

**OD** Abbreviation for Official Declarations. These are typically where the church admits that it was wrong, and changes its stand on some particular issue. They are issued by the President of the church and are considered to be the word of God. The first concerned the banning of polygamy, and the second the granting of the priesthood to all worthy male members, not just white people. Both of these declarations may be found in the back of D&C.

**Office** (1) A position of authority, duty, or trust in the Church organization; (2) an ordained calling or assignment to serve in the priesthood.

**Opening Exercises** The beginning or opening of a meeting. Meetings generally begin with a hymn, a prayer, and business or announcements. Some groups meet together for opening exercises, and then disperse to age-oriented small groups.

**Ordinances** A performance or prescribed ceremony related to the reception of a blessing, covenant, or ordination, such as baptism, confirmation, endowment, marriage, etc., performed by one who has been ordained to the priesthood and authorized to perform the ordinance.

**Outer darkness** A region totally removed from the light and glory of God, to which Satan and his followers will be consigned.

**Parable** A short story that teaches truth or a moral lesson through allegory.

**Paradise** The dwelling place of the spirits of the righteous dead who await resurrection and judgment.

**Patriarch** (1) An office in the Melchizedek Priesthood; (2) a holder of that. Office in the Melchizedek Priesthood who gives patriarchal blessings; (3) an evangelist; (4) the father of a family.

**Patriarchal blessing** A formal blessing given by an ordained patriarch, in which the recipient's lineage from one of the tribes of Israel is usually declared, exhortations are given, and spiritual gifts and life-missions are specified.

**Pearl of Great Price** One of the standard works of the Church, containing the book of Moses, the book of Abraham, Joseph Smith—Matthew (a translation of Matthew 24), the Joseph Smith-History, and the Articles of Faith. The Pearl of Great Price includes extracts from Joseph Smith's Translation (inspired version) of the Bible as well as a translation of some Egyptian papyri containing the writings of the prophet Abraham, excerpts from Joseph Smith's testimony and history, and the Articles of Faith of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. A reference from the Pearl of Great Price may look like this: Moses 5:19.

**Personal Ancestral File (PAF)** A genealogical software package produced by the Church.

**PGP** Abbreviation for Pearl of Great Price. This is one of the LDS holy books. It was originally a collection of pamphlets and other writings that were available in Joseph Smith's time. As such, the book contains several smaller works, most notably the book of Moses which comes from the Joseph Smith inspired version of Genesis (See: Joseph Smith Bible). Another part of the text is the book of Abraham, which Joseph Smith translated from ancient Egyptian scrolls the church purchased in 1835, the interesting thing about the scrolls, and therefore, the book of Abraham, is that the scrolls are actually just an ordinary set of funeral papyrus and are on display at the Metropolitan Museum in New York. We know they are little more than fragments from the Egyptian Book of the Dead because they have since been retranslated by Egyptologists and what the Egyptologists found is that the real translation of the scrolls, bares no resemblance to the book of Abraham. Also contained in the PGP are other excerpts from Joseph Smith's inspired Bible and pieces of Joseph Smith's personal testimony, as well as the articles of faith.

**Pioneer Day** July 24, celebration of the anniversary of the arrival of the Latter-day Saints in Salt Lake Valley in 1847.

**Plan of salvation** The plan presented in the premortal existence providing for the creation, fall, probation, death, resurrection, judgment, salvation, and exaltation of mankind. The great plan prepared by our Father in Heaven before the creation of the world to enable His children to come to earth, receive mortal bodies, and return to live with Him and their families in the life to come. The Atonement of Jesus Christ is central to the plan of salvation, as it makes possible the overcoming of spiritual death, or sin, and the overcoming of physical death by the power of His resurrection.

**Plural marriage** The doctrine that a man may be authorized by revelation from God through the living prophet to have more than one living wife.

**Polygamy** The practice of having more than one wife; more accurately, polygyny.

**Pre-existence** See pre-mortal life.

**Pre-mortal life** The doctrine of life as a spirit being before mortality. It is also called pre-earthly existence or antemortal life.

**Preside** To occupy the leading position of authority, to direct an organization and members within the Church. The President of the Church presides over the entire Church.

**Presidency** A group of people called to preside over an organization, consisting of a president and his or her counsellors.

**Presiding Bishop** A General Authority under the First Presidency who directs the temporal affairs of the Church, assisted by two counsellors; together they compose the Presiding Bishopric.

**Priest** An office in the Aaronic Priesthood. A worthy young man may be ordained a priest when he is 16 years of age or older. Newly baptized adult men are also normally ordained priests shortly following their baptism. Some of a priest's responsibilities are to administer or bless the sacrament and to preach the gospel to the members.

**Priest craft** Misuse of priesthood authority or spiritual gifts to gain personal influence or money.

**Priesthood** (1) The power of God; (2) the authority to act in God's name; (3) the right and responsibility to preside within the Church organization; (4) a term referring to the men of the Church in general.

**Priesthood blessings** Blessings of counsel and divine influence conferred by the authority of the priesthood.

**Priesthood offices** Specific appointments to positions of authority or of responsibility in the priesthood.

**Priesthood quorum** An organized body of male members who hold the same priesthood office.

**Primary** The auxiliary organization in the Church for children from ages eighteen months through eleven years. Children receive two hours of religious instruction each Sunday. One hour is spent with a teacher who provides a lesson for an age-specific group, and a second hour is spent in a combined group of children in instruction and singing.

**Promised land** In Book of Mormon usage, usually the Western Hemisphere.

**Prophecy** Inspired words of a prophet about a future event.

**prophet** (1) When capitalized, often refers to Joseph Smith; (2) when not capitalized, it can refer to the President of the Church, or any authorized spokesman for God; (3) one who has a testimony of Jesus Christ by the Holy Ghost has the "spirit of prophecy" (Rev. 19:10).

**Prophet, seer, and revelator** The special powers and functions held by members of the First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles.

**Proselyte (verb)** An LDS variant of "proselytize," that is, to invite others to convert to The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

**Proxy Baptism** See *Baptism for the Dead*.

**Quorum** An organized group of men or young men who have the same office in the priesthood. Most quorums are governed by a president and two counsellors

**Quorum of the Twelve Apostles** The body of twelve men who, under the direction of the First Presidency, constitute the second-highest presiding quorum of the Church. They are chosen as special witnesses of Christ to all the world. The Quorum of the Twelve Apostles becomes the presiding body of the Church in the event of the death of the prophet, until a new president of the Church is chosen and ordained.

**Quorums of the Seventy** General Authorities organized in bodies of up to seventy members. Under supervision of the First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve, they direct missionary and other administrative activities of the Church.

**Reformed Egyptian** A set of characters used by Book of Mormon writers on metal plates because of their conciseness.

**Regional Representative** A specially called priesthood leader who serves in a teaching and training capacity between stake leaders and an Area Presidency. Each region consists of several stakes.

**Relief Society** The adult women's auxiliary organization of the Church. It complements the priesthood. The Prophet Joseph Smith organized the Relief Society in 1842. It is the largest women's organization in the world. Two primary objectives of the Relief Society are compassionate service and strengthening the women of the Church.

**Reorganized Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints** A church that arose in response to the schism that followed the June 27, 1844, murder of Joseph Smith. Formally organized on April 6, 1860, at Amboy, Illinois.

**Repentance** The process of experiencing sincere regret or sorrow for wrongdoing, confessing one's sin and asking for forgiveness, making restitution for any damage done, and committing not to repeat the sin. Repentance is made possible by the Atonement of Jesus Christ, who paid the price for the sins of all humanity.

**Restitution** 1. The restoration of property or rights previously taken away. 2. The restoration of truth, blessings, rights, or status previously taken away. Before the Second Coming of Jesus Christ there must be a "restitution of all things" revealed by God to his ancient prophets. (Acts 3:19-21)

**Restoration** (1) The re-establishment of the ancient gospel of Jesus Christ through Joseph Smith in the latter days; (2) the culmination of God's work on the earth in the latter days, including the restoration of the gospel, the gathering of Israel, and the renewal of the earth; (3) the returning of good for good, or evil for evil, in the last judgment (Alma 41:13).

**Returned missionary** One who has completed a full-time mission for the Church.

**Revelation** The making known of divine truths by communication from God.

**RLDS** An abbreviation for Reorganized Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints (which seems to currently be re-branding itself as the “Community of Christ”). The RLDS is a church very similar to the LDS. This branch is much smaller and came into existence as a result of the split in the church following Joseph Smith’s death and the resulting struggle for the succession of the office of prophet amongst various factions. The RLDS maintained that the new prophet should be a descendant of Joseph Smith’s and remain near, or in, the Nauvoo Illinois Zion site, where the majority of the membership at the time was eager to follow Brigham Young (who was at the time the next senior church official behind Smith) west to Salt Lake (though at the time the destination was merely “west”) in order to flee the persecution that had led to the death of Smith. Those who recognized Young as prophet and fled west retained the name “LDS” and those who remained adopted the name RLDS. The RLDS believe in the teachings of Joseph Smith, but not those of Young. The RLDS retain temple worship, though in a form distinctly different from the form practiced by the LDS. The RLDS temple is located in Independence Missouri. While the RLDS and the LDS share a common history, and belief structure, the RLDS differ in significant ways.

**RM** Returned Missionary, or in other words, some one who has gone on their mission and come back home. These people are very highly regarded within their respective wards, and in all of Mormon society in fact. Returning from a mission will insure healthy prospects for marriage within his singles ward. Conversely, if a woman should attain the title of RM, she is likely headed toward spinsterhood, as she is too old, and too confident to be attractive to many unmarried LDS men. When used sarcastically, the term “RM” may apply to an ex- or “Recovering Mormon.”

**Roadshow** A brief, original dramatic production, often presented at two or more locations within a stake.

**Sacrament** The water and bread blessed and distributed as emblems of the body and blood of Jesus Christ to Church members in ward or branch meetings, as introduced by the Savior to His Apostles at the Last Supper. The bread and water represent the body and blood sacrificed by the Savior. (Matthew 26:26-28; Luke 22:15-20)

**Sacrament meeting** The principal worship meeting of the Church, during which the sacrament of the Lord's Supper is blessed and distributed to members of the Church. The members also pray, sing, and hear sermons.

**Sacred** Regarded with reverence; holy.

**Sacred Grove** The grove of trees near Palmyra/ Manchester, New York, in which in 1820 Joseph Smith received his First Vision of God the Father and Jesus Christ.

**Saints** Faithful members of the Church.

**Salvation** Resurrection to a kingdom of glory; sometimes used to signify exaltation in the celestial kingdom.

**Sanctify** To make holy or pure; free from sin.

**Saved** (1) To be delivered from physical death by the grace of God, through the death and resurrection of Jesus Christ; (2) to be delivered from the consequences of personal sin by the grace of God through faith in Jesus Christ, repentance, and obedience to the commandments of God.

**Scripture** A sacred writing or book; the word of God as revealed to His inspired prophets.

**Scriptures** See Standard Works.

**Sealed portion of the plates** A segment of the gold plates that Joseph Smith obtained from the hill Cumorah, containing a revelation from the beginning to the end of the world. This segment was not translated by Joseph Smith.

**Sealing** (1) Through the power of the priesthood, making valid in heaven an action performed on earth; (2) the temple ordinance joining husband and wife or children and parents for time and eternity.

**Second Comforter** A name-title for Jesus Christ. (See Comforter.)

**Seer** A person endowed with a special gift of seeing spiritually the past, present, and the future. (See Prophet, Seer and Revelator)

**Seer stones** Sacred stones that, when used by a person with the gift of seership, reveal the past, present, and future. (See Urim and Thummim.)

**Self-reliance** The principle that individual Church members and families should, to the extent possible, provide and plan for their own necessities.

**Seminaries** The weekday religious instruction program of the Church for secondary-school students. Three types of programs are available: daily classes available during regular school hours, daily classes available before or after the regular school day, and home study courses.

**Setting apart** The authorization of an individual, by the laying on of hands to serve in a calling in the Church.

**Seventy** An office in the Melchizedek Priesthood, with a special calling to missionary service or to administrative duties. Today all the Seventy are General Authorities.

**Sick, blessing the** An ordinance in which ill persons are anointed with consecrated olive oil and blessed by Melchizedek Priesthood holders, to the end that healing may take place. (See Anointing.)

**Single adults** Adult Church members who are not married.

**Sister** A female member of the Church. Also used as a title for female missionaries.

**Social Services** A separate corporation from the Church (called LDS Social Services) which serves as a resource for meeting special social and emotional needs of Church members.

**Solemn assemblies** Special assemblies of priesthood holders, generally held in temples.

**Sons of perdition** Individuals who have sinned against the Holy Ghost and have thus committed the unpardonable sin.

**Soul** The united spirit and body. All living things on earth are souls, meaning they consist of a spirit body and a physical body.

**Spirit body** A being formed of refined element, with which a physical body of earthly element unites to form a soul. Human spirits are literally children of God.

**Spirit prison** The place where the spirits of the dead, particularly the untaught and nonrighteous, await resurrection and judgment.

**Spirit world** The place where the spirits of the dead await resurrection and judgment; it consists of paradise, prison, and hell.

**Stake** A geographical-ecclesiastical unit of the Church, composed of several wards and sometimes branches, generally about three thousand to five thousand members in five to ten congregations.

**Stake centre** A meetinghouse of the Church in which the administrative offices of stake leaders are also located.

**Stake president** The presiding authority of a stake.

**Standard works** The canonized Latter-day Saint scriptures: Bible, Book of Mormon, Doctrine and Covenants, and Pearl of Great Price. (The latter three, when bound under one cover, are often called the "Triple Combination.")

**Stewardship** Responsibility to administer or attend to the assignments one receives in a Church calling, or to take care of those things with which we are blessed from God, including families, neighbours, and even temporal blessings.

**Stick of Joseph** A biblical term having reference to the Book of Mormon, which is a record of a remnant of the posterity of Joseph who was sold into Egypt (Ezek. 37:15-19).

**Stick of Judah** A biblical term having reference to the Bible, being a record of the Jews and preserved by the prophets of Judah and by the apostles (Ezek. 37:15-19).

**Sustain** To give support; to accept. Members who are issued callings have their names put before the body of the Church for a sustaining vote before beginning service in that calling. Once each year officers called to direct organizations on a local Church level are presented to the members for a sustaining vote. General officers of the Church are presented for a sustaining vote every six months at general conference.

**Tabernacle** (1) The physical body in which a person's spirit dwells during earth life; (2) a special building used for assemblies, such as the Tabernacle on Temple Square.

**Teacher** An office in the Aaronic Priesthood. A worthy young man is normally ordained a teacher at the age of 14. Some of a teacher's responsibilities are to prepare the sacrament and to teach the truths of the gospel from the scriptures. Those who instruct classes are also referred to as teachers by virtue of their assignment not related to a priesthood office.

**Telestial kingdom** The lowest of three degrees of glory; inherited by the wicked after they have suffered for their sins.

**Temple** A sacred building, the "House of the Lord," in which Latter-day Saints perform sacred ceremonies and ordinances of the gospel for themselves and for the dead.

**Temple marriage** A term for a marriage solemnized by an eternal covenant in a Latter-day Saint temple.

**Temple ordinances** Sacred ceremonies performed in Latter-day Saint temples.

**Temple recommend** A certificate of worthiness to participate in temple ordinances. A temple recommend is issued for a period of two years, at which time it can be renewed.

**Temple Square** A ten-acre city block in Salt Lake City on which the Salt Lake Temple, Tabernacle, and adjacent buildings are located.

**Temple Work** Sacred ordinances of the gospel performed in the temples by those who are living for themselves and for those who are dead. These ordinances include baptisms, confirmations, endowments, eternal marriages, and sealings of couples and of families.

**Ten tribes** Those tribes of the house of Israel carried captive into Assyria c.



721 BC; known as the lost tribes of Israel because they became lost to the people and records of the Bible. Prophecy proclaims their return in the latter days. (See Israel)

**Terrestrial kingdom** The middle of the three degrees of glory; inherited by "honourable" people of the earth who did not accept the fullness of the gospel of Jesus Christ.

**Testimony** A personal expression of one's convictions or beliefs about the gospel of Jesus Christ. Members regularly take the opportunity to share individual testimonies for the purpose of strengthening one another. This is commonly referred to as bearing testimony. On the first Sunday of each month, sacrament meetings are set aside for the bearing of testimonies by the membership.

**Three Witnesses, The** Oliver Cowdery, David Whitmer, and Martin Harris. These men bore written testimony that an angel appeared to them and showed them the gold plates which Joseph Smith translated into the Book of Mormon. They also testified that they heard the voice of God declaring the record to be divine.

**Time and eternity** A term suggesting that gospel ordinances and blessings are valid forever, both on earth and in the heavens.

**Tithing** The donation of one-tenth of one's increase (income) to the Church.

**Topical guide** An index and concordance to the standard works of the Church; contained in the LDS publication of the Bible.

**Transgression** Violation or breaking of a commandment or law; sin.

**Translated beings** Individuals who are changed in mortality so that they do not experience physical pain and whose death and resurrection will be in a "twinkling of the eye"; Enoch, Elijah, and John the Beloved are examples.

**Triple combination** (See Standard Works.)

**United orders** Social and economic orders in which Church members, in an act of consecration, deed their property to a bishop, who allots stewardships and resources according to need. It is not currently being practiced in the Church.

**Unpardonable sin** The sin against the Holy Ghost.

**Urim and Thummim** Two stones set in "silver bows," and often associated with a breastplate, given to Joseph Smith to aid in the translation of the Book of Mormon and in receiving other revelations. The Urim and Thummim mentioned in the Bible are probably not the same as those possessed by Joseph Smith. God provided Urim and Thummim to his prophets in ancient times (see Exodus 28:30, 1 Samuel 28:6, Ezra 2:63).

**Vicarious Work** Ordinance work done on behalf of those who are deceased. See *Baptism for the Dead*.

**Visiting teaching** A Church program in which members of the Relief Society are assigned to visit regularly other sisters to give brief instruction and support. It enables every woman to be visited in her home and to receive instruction, fellowship, and needed assistance from fellow sisters. Each woman is typically assigned two visiting teachers who visit monthly

**Visitors' centres** Reception centres of the Church, at temples and historic sites, to introduce visitors to the history and doctrine of the Church.

**War in heaven** The conflict between Lucifer and Jesus Christ, and their followers, in the premortal existence.

**Ward** A geographic ecclesiastical unit in the Church, consisting of several hundred members presided over by a bishop.

**Washings and anointings** Initiatory temple ordinances, preliminary to endowment.

**Welfare** A plan and program in the Church administered by priesthood officers and the Relief Society which attends to the temporal well-being of needy members and admonishes all members to become self-reliant.

**Welfare square** A geographic block in Salt Lake City reflecting the emphasis in the Church on storing food and other commodities for emergencies.

**Word of wisdom** The revealed health code of the Church, as set forth in section 89 of the Doctrine and Covenants. It proscribes the use of alcohol, tea, coffee, tobacco, and other harmful drugs.

**Worship** Reverence, honour, or devotion to God, sometimes involving prayer, singing hymns, meditation, sacred ordinances, or preaching.

**Worthy Member** A Church member who obeys the commandments of God to the best of his or her ability, and meets a minimum acceptable standard outlined by Church leaders.

**Year's supply** A supply of food, clothing, and, where possible, fuel and other items necessary to sustain life for a year. Church leaders encourage members, where possible, to store such items as a principle of management and in preparation for an emergency.

**Young adult** The program in the Church for young single members.

**Young men** The instruction and activity program in the Church for young men ages twelve to eighteen. Young men meet for religious instruction on Sunday, and are generally involved in Boy Scouts as part of their weekly activities.

**Young Single Adults** A program of the Church for unmarried adults ages 18-30. The program includes religious instruction as well as activities where young people can meet and socialize.

**Young Women** A youth organization of the Church for young women ages 12-18. Young women meet for religious instruction on Sunday, and during the week for other activities designed to strengthen relationships, develop skills, and build testimonies of Christ.

**Zion** A word meaning the "pure in heart"; also a geographic location where the righteous are gathered by obedience to the gospel.

**Zone** A unit of organization within the boundaries of a mission. Typically, several zones compose a mission.

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS FOR CONFUCIANISM



**Acupuncture** (Mandarin: Zhenci liaofa) One of the most widely known therapies from Traditional Chinese Medicine. In Acupuncture therapy, needles are used to stimulate precise points on the body to rebalance or unblock the flow of vital energy within the body.

**Acupressure** Uses finger pressure or massage instead of needles to accomplish the same goal.

**Aikido** “Way of Harmonious Energy.” A Japanese internal martial art founded by Morihei Ueshiba that emphasizes the use of internal strength in controlling the opponent’s momentum through techniques of locking and throwing. Strikes are not emphasized and Aikido movements do not meet force with force.

**A mi tou fo** (O Lay Toe Fut) Buddhist greeting, a phonetic of Amitabha.

**An** (On) Press, push down

**An tou** (On Tao) Head spring

**Ao bu** (Ow Bo) Twist stance

**Ba gua** (Bat Gwah) Eight diagrams

**Ba gua zhang** (Pa Kua Chang) “Eight Trigram Palm.” An internal martial art which emphasizes the use of internal strength in close fighting with circular footwork and body movements. Baguazhang, or Bagua, is based on the Classic of Changes or Yi Jing (I-Ching) and is well known for its fast, evasive footwork, intricate coiling and numerous palm strikes.

**Bai gong bu** (Ban Gung Bo) Bow stance with heel raised

**Bang shou** (Bong Sao) Wing arm block

**Ba xian** (Baht Seen) Eight Immortals. Also Zuibaxian (Joei Baht Seen) Drunk Eight Immortals. Characters from Chinese mythology.

**Bian tui** (Lun Wan Toy) Roundhouse kick

**Bing qi** (Bing Hey) Weapon.

**Bi sai** (Bey Choy) Competition, contest

**Bo** (Po) Parry, brush aside

**Bo shou** (Fak sa) Sweeping arm to strike open hand

**Buddha** “Enlightened One.” The Buddha refers to an Indian sage by the name of Siddhartha Gautama who lived from 560-480 BCE. (see Buddhism below)

**Buddhism** (In Mandarin: Fojiao) An Indian and Chinese philosophy discovered by The Buddha.

**Bu Hao** (Um Ho) Not Good

**Cai** (Chai) Pluck, pull

**Cai jiao** (Chai Geuk) Front toe kick with slap

**Ce chua tui** (Juk Dun Toy) Side thrust kick

**Ce ti tui** (Juk Yee Toy) Side kick

**Ce shou fan** (Juk Sun Fan) Cartwheel

**Chan** (Sim) Zen

**Chan qiao** (Chan Kiu) Spade bridge

**Chen qiao** (Chum Kiu) Sinking bridge

**Chan si jing** (Chan Si Bong) "Silk-Reeling Practice" or "Spiral-Power Practice." A set of exercises peculiar to Chen-style Taijiquan used to develop the coordination and strength that form the basis of internal strength. See Silk Reeling.

**Chen shou** (Chum Sao) Wrist pushing down low block  
**Chen Jia Taijiquan** (Chan Gar Tai Gik Kune) Chen Family Tai Chi Chuan. Attributed to Chen Wang Ting, this style of Taijiquan developed as the secret style of the Chen family of the village of Chenjiagou in Henan province. Believed to be between 300 and 400 years old, the Chen style is widely acknowledged to be the ancestor of the other major styles of Taijiquan. Chen style is popularly characterized by low stances, overtly visible coiling and distinctive power releases or fajing.

**Chin Na** See Qin na

**Chuai** (Chai) Stamp foot, kick with heel

**Chuai tui** (Chai Toy) Sidekick or stomp kick

**Chuan** (Chuen) Thrust Circle Walking A skill-development exercise, or gong, used in several internal Martial Arts but especially emphasized in Baguazhang. Like Zhan Zhuang or standing gongs, circle walking develops posture, coordination and internal strength, but has the added benefit that it helps develop movement skills at the same time.

**Chün-tzu** superior man, gentleman, noble, scholar - the superior man is a model that the students are to emulate along with the sages and good kings of old. Superior Man is a common English translation for the Chinese term *chün-tzu* which originally means "Son of a Prince"- thus, someone from the nobility. In the *Analects*, Confucius imbues the term with a special meaning. Though sometimes used strictly in its original sense, it also refers to a person who has made significant progress in the Way (Tao) of self-cultivation, by practicing Righteousness, by loving treatment of parents, respect for elders, honesty with friends, etc. Though the *chün-tzu* is clearly a highly advanced human being, he is still distinguished from the category of sage (*sheng-jen*), who is, in the *Analects* more of a "divine being," usually a model from great antiquity.

The character of the Superior Man, in contrast to the sage, is being taught as a tangible model for all in the here and now. And although many descriptions of the requirements for *chün-tzu* status seem quite out of our reach, there are many passages where Confucius labels a contemporary, or one of his disciples a "Superior Man," intending a complement. Thus, the categorization is not so rigid. One might want to compare the term "Superior Man" to the Buddhist *bodhisattva*, in that both are the models for the tradition, both indicate a very high stage of human development as technical terms, yet both may be used colloquially to refer to a "really good person."

**Circle Walking** A skill-development exercise, or gong, used in several internal Martial Arts but especially emphasized in Baguazhang. Like Zhan Zhuang or standing gongs, circle walking develops posture, coordination and internal strength, but has the added benefit that it helps develop movement skills at the same time.

**Coiling** The spiral body movement that is characteristic of some internal martial arts. The coiling movement is the natural expression of spiral energy being transferred from the legs and waist to the upper extremities.

**Confucianism** (In Mandarin Ru; Cantonese Ro) A philosophical system founded on the teachings of the Chinese sage Confucius.

**Confucius** A Chinese sage who lived from 551-479 BCE and founded Confucianism.

**Da Strike**

**Da** (Dai) Big

**Da lu** (Ta Lu) "Big Roll Back." A two-person Taijiquan exercise used to develop the corner powers (Cai, Lieh, Zhou, and Kao). In some styles such as Chen-style Taijiquan, Dalu is considered to be a Push Hands drill, whereas in others, such as Yang-style Taijiquan, it is treated as an exercise distinct from Push Hands.

**Da qiao** (Dahp Kiu) Joining bridge

**Dan tian** (Dan Tim) The region just below the navel, centre of qi power where deep breathing is directed. Literally "red field" A Daoist term referring to a centre of energy located approximately two inches below the navel and inside the lower abdomen. The location roughly corresponds to the centre of mass of a person standing in a natural posture, hence it is often referred to as the "centre of being." In the internal Martial Arts, Qi is considered to be stored in the Dantian. In the Chinese Classics, the Dantian is referred to as the place where one produces the elixir of immortality.

**Dan** (Darn) Single

**Dao jiao (Do Gow)** Taoism. A Chinese philosophical and spiritual system, founded on the principles of the Dao De Jing written by Lao Tzu. Dao literally means "the Way."

**Dao jiao** (Do Gow) Taoism. A Chinese philosophical and spiritual system, founded on the principles of the Dao De Jing written by Lao Tzu. Dao literally means "the Way."

**Diao shou** (Ngow Sao) Hooking hand

**Ding bu** (Ding Bo) Also Ding Bo Mah. T-stance, empty stance or cat stance.

**Duan** (Tun) Short, close

**Duan** (Dun) Rank, grade

**Eight Trigrams** See Ba gua. The Bagua are the basis of the Classic of Changes or Yi Jing (I Ching) Each of the trigrams has an associated martial movement, and are represented in many forms of Kung Fu including Baguazhang, Taijiquan and Praying Mantis. The movements are: ward off (peng), roll back (lu), press (ji), push (an), shoulder stroke (kao), elbow stroke (zhou), pull (cai) and rip open (lie).

**Emulation** Modelling oneself after moral exemplars. In Confucianism one of the ways one cultivates oneself is to emulate the model of the *chün-tzu* or superior man. Another is to model oneself after key figures of the past including worthy kings and sages.

**Er zi qian yang ma** (Yee Gee Kim Yeung Mah) Triangle stance. Literally "two-shaped character, squeeze the goat or withdraw the testicles, horse"

**E mei Shan** (O Mei San) A Buddhist holy mountain of China in Sichuan Province. Literally "high, eyebrow peaceful mountain"

**External** (In Mandarin Wai) Referring to the use of muscular force or mechanical energy in the physical body.

**Fa** (Faht) Skill, method

**Fa jing** (Fa Ging) explosive energy, exert strength. The explosive release of strength or power that was previously stored. Especially emphasized in the martial aspects of Taijiquan, fajing is classified as the use of internal strength to produce a powerful strike, whip, or push.

**Five Elements** (In Mandarin Wu Xing) A system in Chinese philosophy based on the observations of the interacting processes of the natural world. In the Five Element system, distinctions can be made between five dynamic processes, functions and characteristics: Water, Fire, Wood, Metal and Earth. Each of the elements relates to other elements through three cycles: the Shen Cycle or system of mutual production or promotion; the Ke Cycle or system of mutual destruction or control; and the Cosmological Cycle or mirror of the human body.

**Fo jiao** (Fut Gow) See Buddhism

**Form** (In Mandarin Taolu) A formally defined posture, movement, or set of movements used to teach coordination and technique to a student of Kung Fu. The basic postures, movements and techniques of a Martial Art are often collected into a form or group of forms for ease of practice and memorization. A group of formal movements may also be called a set. Often called by the Japanese term Kata in the U.S.A.

**Fu shou** (Fook Sao) Controlling hand

**Fu tou tui** (Fu Tao Toy) Axe kick

**Gong** (Kung or Gung) “Work.” A practice or exercise used in Kung Fu to develop a skill or “power.” There are many kinds of gongs, both internal (neigong) and external (waigong), leading to many different kinds of skills or powers.

**Gong bu** (Gung Bo) Also Gung Chin Mah. Bow stance

**Gong fu** (Kung Fu) Also Kungfu, Gung Fu. Time, workmanship, skill, art, effort. A common generic term for any Martial Art that originated in China. “Kung Fu” is a comparatively modern term — it has only been used in the 20th century. The classical Chinese terms for Martial Arts include wushu, wuyi, quanfa and quanshu.

**Guan** (Kwoon) Literally Hall, but in martial arts, it refers specifically to the school or gym where one is instructed in the Chinese Martial Arts.

**Gui chui** (Kwar Choy) Hanging punch

**Gui ma** (Kwai Mah) Kneeling horse stance

**Guo shu** (Gok Sut) Also Kuoshu. Another word for martial arts, often used by Taiwanese. Literally “national art”

**Hao** (Ho) Good

**Heng Shan** (Heng San) The northern holy mountain of China in Hunan Province. Literally “judge, measure mountain”

**Heng Shan** (Heng San) The southern holy mountain of China in Shanxi Province. Literally “permanent, lasting mountain”

**He shang** (Wo Seung) Monk

**Hsiao** familial love, filial piety, kindness, respect, and loyalty among family members. Example: the son who does not testify against his father who has stolen a sheep. Also, from the *Doctrine of the Mean* 13:

(1) Treating my father as I expect my son to treat me.

(2) Treating my ruler as I expect my ministers to treat me.

(3) Treating my older brothers as I expect my younger brothers to treat me.

(4) Treating my friends as I expect my friends to treat me

**Hua Shan** (Wah San) The western holy mountain of China in Shaanxi Province. Literally “magnificent, China mountain”

**Internal** (In Mandarin Nei) Referring to intrinsic power generated by the Qi or life force energy contained in the body. In the internal Martial Arts (Neijia), the use of Internal Strength is of utmost importance. Internal Strength is not generated through muscular action, but rather is a product of the inherent binding quality of body tissue. It is utilized in combat through the relaxed coordination of the legs and waist to bear on objects through contact made by the hands, arms, or other points on the upper body.

**Jen/ren** humanity, humaneness, benevolence, compassion, love for fellow beings, "co-humanity". This term also can be translated human excellence, humaneness, virtue. It is a characteristic of humanity at its best, a source of moral principles, and the outcome of a moral life. "The Chinese character jen is formed from symbols that mean "two human beings." Thus it represents the ideal relationship among humans." The Chinese term *jen* has been translated into English as "humanity," "benevolence," "goodness," "Perfect Goodness," etc. It is a difficult concept to translate because it doesn't really refer to any specific type of virtue or positive endowment, but refers to an inner capacity possessed by all human beings to do good, as human beings should. This is the reason some have translated it as "humanity." The problem with this translation is that it does not indicate the "goodness" implied by the term *jen*. In the Chinese "essence-function" perception, *jen* can be understood as the essence of all kinds of manifestations of virtuosity: wisdom, filial piety, reverence, courtesy, love, sincerity, etc., all of which are aspects, or functions of *jen*. Through one's efforts at practicing at the function of *jen*, one may enhance and develop one's *jen*, until one may be called a Superior Man, or even better, a "Person of *jen*." In the Analects, "person of *jen*" is an extremely high state, rarely acknowledged of any human being by Confucius

**Ji** (Lin) Press, squeeze

**Jia** (Gar) Family, household or clan

**Jian** (Jin) Scissors

**Jian chui** (Jin Choy) Arrow punch

**Jiao ma** (Gwok Mah) Angled horse stance

**Ji ben gong** (Gei Bun Gung) Basic training

**Jin Na Shou** (Lop Sao) Grabbing hand

**Jing** (Ging) Literally “Essence of life” but used in Kungfu to refer to any skill, strength or ability developed as a result of, and as the goal of, practice in Kungfu. Jing is a generic term that applies equally to the strength or force developed by a skilled movement and to the skill or ability to execute a movement or postural technique correctly.

**Jing shen** (Jing Sun) Vital spirit

**Jin hua Shan** (Gow Wah San) A Buddhist holy mountain of China in Anhui Province. Literally “nine magnificent mountain”

**Kai shi** (Hoy Chi) Begin

**Kan** (Jahm) Chop

**Kao** (Kow) Lean into

**Kong fan** (Hong Fahn) Aerial

**Kua** (Gwa) The inguinal basin (a passage toward the front of the body - abdominal wall), where the top end of the thigh-bone (the femur) attaches to the pelvic girdle. The term "kua" refers to the entire inguinal area, including both sides of the lower pelvis and the articulation where the movement of the thigh joint occurs. The proper opening, closing, and sinking of the kua is an important basic part of internal Martial Arts.

**Kuai** (Fai) Fast, quick

**Kun lun Shan** (Qun Lun San) A mountain range in Qinghai and Xinjiang Uygur Zizhiqu renown for martial arts

**Lan shou** (Lan Sao) Barring hand

**Lao Shan** (Low San) A mountain in Shandong famous for martial arts.

**Lao shi** (Low See) Teacher

**Lei** (Loey) Rest

**Lei tai** (Loey Toy) An elevated stage for free sparring matches  
**li** ritual, propriety, etiquette, rites, body of rules governing actions, tradition. Li is the social glue. "The rules of behaviour governing the interaction between people in recurring social contexts, such as the way to conduct sacrifices, marriage ceremonies and funerals, the way for hosts and guests to interact, as well as various obligations one has toward another person in virtue of the different positions the two occupy within the family or state. The term 'li', which refers to such rules, is often translated as 'rites' because it originally referred to rites of sacrifice and, even when used more broadly to refer to various rules of conduct, it still emphasizes the ceremonial.

**Lian** (Lun) Connected, continuous, linked

**Lian** (Lin) Practice

**Lian wu zhe** (Lin Mo Jeh) Martial arts practitioner

**Lian huan quan** (Lin wan kuen) Chain punches

**Lie shou** (Lop Sao) Grasping hand

**Li he tui** (Noy Hap Toy) Inside crescent kick

**Lie** (Leet) Split, crack, rip open

**Liu he** (Lok Hop) Six harmonies - hand, elbow, shoulder, foot, knee, hip

**Lu** (Yeung) Yield

**Luo han** (Law Horn) Also Lohan. An Arhat, a Buddhist who has achieved nirvana, striving for their own salvation, in contrast to a bodhisattva who seeks to free all sentient beings

**Lu shou** (Luk Sao) Rolling hand

**Ma bu** (Mah Bo) Also Jong Mah. Horse stance

**Man** Slow

**Meditation** Thought, reflection, and contemplation in order to train the mind, focus the awareness and cultivate the spirit. Sometimes referred to in Mandarin as Neigong or "Inner work."

**Mei hua** (Moi Fah) Plum Flower

**Mei hua Zhuang** (Moi Fah Chen) Plum flower poles. A pattern of poles set in the ground on top of which martial artists practice special forms

**Men** (Moon) Gate or door. Refers to openings in defence or a specific school or lineage



**Mu zhuang** (Mok Jong) Also Mok Yan Jong. Wooden dummy

**Ni Hao** (Lei Ho) A greeting, literally “you good”

**Nian shou** (Chi Sao) Sticky hands

**Nei jia** (Noy Gar) Internal school. See Internal.

**Pai** School or system

**Pai shou** (Pak Sao) Slapping hand

**Pao** (Pow) Cannon

**Particularism** In the context of a contrast between particularism and the universalism of systems such as utilitarianism or Kantianism which favour universal rules which apply to all persons in the same way, particularism holds that there are particular responsibilities that inhere in particular relationships such as that between parent and child, husband and wife, ruler and subject, friend and friend. In this sense, particularism holds that there are special responsibilities and duties required in such relationships because of the role one plays. This is similar to the concept of fiduciary relationships or special relationships between lawyers and clients, doctors and patients, etc.

**Peng** (Pang) Ward off. The power of bringing internal strength from the legs and waist to the hands or point of contact with an opponent, usually from the Taijiquan posture known as Ward Off. The Ward Off posture uses a wide, well-rooted stance and an extended arm, and is often seen as a component in the movement set “Grasp Bird’s Tail.”

**Peng Jing** (Pang Ging) Ward Off; Ward Off Power

**Pu tuo Shan** (Po To San) A Buddhist holy mountain of China in Zhejiang Province. Literally “universal top mountain”

**Pi** (Pek) Split, cleave, cut

**Pian chui** (Pien Choy) Side punch

**Pian ma** (Pien Mah) Side horse stance

**Pi tui** (Pek Toy) Also Yut Chi Mah. Split

**Pu bu** (Pook Bo) Also Pook Toy. Crouch stance

**Push Hands** (In Mandarin Tuishou) A two-person exercise in Taijiquan used to teach students the martial aspects of the Taiji principles. Push Hands practice usually begins using simple, pre-defined sets of movements to teach coordination. As the student advances, emphasis is placed on bringing internal strength to the extremities and maintaining control while moving in contact with another person. Over time, more complex movement patterns are added and constraints removed until Push Hands becomes the Taiji equivalent of “free sparring.”

**Qi** (Chi) Vital energy, the energy of life. Literally “gas.” The primordial energy which is the basis for the universe and everything in it. It is the matrix out of which matter and energy are formed, and is expressed as the “life force” in all living things.

**Qigong** (Ch’i Kung) “Energy Work.” Exercises designed to coordinate, develop and/or increase Qi. Although internal in nature, these exercises usually have a physical form or component, leading to the common Western term of “Moving Meditation.” There is an enormous variety of qigong practices, and many Kungfu styles have their own unique form of qigong.

**Qian deng tui** (Chun Dang Toy) Front heel kick

**Qian kun** (Kin Kwan) Heaven and earth. Qian and kun are opposite trigrams of the bagua. Qian is three solid lines and kun is three broken lines.

**Qiao shou** (Kiu Sao) Bridge hand

**Qi gong** (Chi Kung) Also Hei Gung. Exercises to cultivate qi, usually systems of deep breathing techniques

**Qi xing** (Chut Sing) Seven star

**Qin na** (Kum Na) Also Chin Na. The Chinese art of bone and joint locking. This art of grappling and controlling an opponent's limbs, usually by manipulating the joints, muscles and pressure points, is present in many styles of Kungfu.

**Quan** (Kune) Also Chuan. Literally fist, but can mean martial style or a form.

**Release** In internal Martial Arts, to move in such a way that potential energy stored in the musculoskeletal structure is directed outward into a strike, whip, or push. See "Store."

**Ri yue** (Yu Yuet) Sun and moon.

**Root** A term common to many Kung Fu styles and other martial arts, rooting is the skill or quality of aligning the feet and body so that force is transferred efficiently into the ground, allowing for maximum stability and balance. Many martial tactics in Kung Fu are designed to uproot an opponent in order to deny him or her this advantage.

**Ru shi Di zi** (Yup Sut Dai Gee) Disciple

**Ruan** (Yuen) Soft

**San Da** (San Da) free sparring. Literally "loose hit"

**San Shou** (San Sao) Free sparring. Literally "loose hand"

**San xing** (Sam Sing) Three star

**Sao tui** (Sou Toy) Leg sweep

**Self-cultivation** - a constant process of self-improvement that is an essential part of Confucianism. One polishes oneself. Self-cultivation often involves emulation (modelling oneself on real or ideal role models including the Superior Man). Muller translation of the *Analects*: 1:15 Tzu Kung asked: "What do you think of a poor man who doesn't grovel or a rich man who isn't proud?" Confucius said, "They are good, but not as good as a poor man who is satisfied and a rich man who loves propriety." Tzu Kung said, "The Book of Odes says:

Like cutting and filing,

Grinding and polishing

This simile for the process of self-perfection is found often in Confucian texts.

Is this what you are talking about?"

Confucius said, "Ah, now I can begin to discuss the Book of Odes with Tz'u. I give him a hint and he gets the whole point."

For Mencius, one cultivates the four sprouts with which one is born. One seeks to emulate or model oneself on role models such as the ancient sages, good kings, and the superior man.

**Si ping ma** (Sei Ping Mah) Four-corner horse stance

**Shan** (San) Mountain

**Shang** (Seung) Up, above

**Shao lin** (Sil Lum) The Buddhist Temple attributed for the founding of Zen (Chan) and Kungfu in Henan Province, China. Literally, "young forest."

Considered by many to be the birthplace of the unique Chinese Martial Arts, the Shaolin Temple in Henan, China was founded by the Indian Buddhist monk, Batuo, in 495 CE under the imperial patronage of Emperor Xiao Wen Di of the Northern Wei Dynasty. In 527 CE an Indian monk named Bodhidharma arrived to teach Buddhism to the Chinese monks. Finding the monks too weak to practice meditation properly, he taught them a series of external exercises known as the Eighteen Hands of Lohan, and an internal exercise system known as the Classic of Bone and Tendon Changing. From these exercises were developed Shaolin Lohan Kung Fu and Shaolin Qigong, the fountainhead arts for the many martial systems which were developed or refined at Shaolin.

**Shi zu** (Sijo) founder of a system

**Shi zu** (Sigung) Grandmaster

**Short Power** A release of power over a very short distance and time, resulting in a strong, brief pulse of force. Seen frequently in the internal Martial Arts, many southern styles of Kung Fu and other arts such as Aikido, hitting with Short Power involves delivering a strike without needing to draw back or otherwise gain kinetic force or momentum. Short Power was made famous by Bruce Lee's "one-inch punch."

**Shuang** (Cern) Double, often used to refer to double or "twin" weapons

**Shuai** (Sut) Throw

**Shuai Jiao** (Sut Gok) "Hold the Horn and Throw." Considered by many to be the oldest form of Kung Fu surviving today, the wrestling art of Shuai Jiao can be traced back some 4,000 years.

**Song Shan** (Sung San) The central holy mountain of China in Henan Province, where Shaolin Temple is located. Literally "lofty mountain"

**Silk Reeling** (In Mandarin Chan Si Jing) A category of exercises in the internal arts used to develop coordination, strength and suppleness while drawing on internal strength. The name comes from the similarities between the natural coiling or spiralling movements used in the internal arts and the movements used in the process of reeling silk thread. To process silk, a single strand must be pulled and wound using continuous and uninterrupted pressure. Developing and applying internal strength requires the same concentration, and the concept of "reeling silk" is sometimes used as a teaching aid in instilling these sometimes hard to comprehend principles. See Chan si jing.

**Store** In internal Martial Arts, to move in such a way that kinetic energy is transformed to potential energy stored in the musculoskeletal structure of the body. See "Release."

**Sou shi** (Sao Sik) Ending form

**Sun Jia Taijiquan** (Sun Gar Tai Gik Kune) Sun Family Taijiquan. A style of Taijiquan developed by Sun Lutang, a famous master of Xingyiquan and Baguazhang. Sun learned Yang-style Taijiquan and developed Sun style as an offshoot of that system, incorporating ideas from Xingyiquan and Baguazhang. Sun style is characterized by compact movements with little visible coiling.

**Taiji** (Tai Gik) The fusion of Yin and Yang. See Yin and Yang.

**Taijiquan** (Tai Gik Kune) Also Tai Chi Chuan "Grand Ultimate Fist." A Chinese internal art form that is based in the principles of Yin and Yang. Taiji

is characterized by wave-like motion, power releases that resemble shaking or shuddering, and long forms that are practiced with slow, relaxed movements. Today's predominant styles of Tai Chi are Yang, Sun, Wu, and Chen.

**Tai Shan** (Tai San) The eastern holy mountain of China in Shandong Province. Literally "safe, peaceful mountain"

**Tai Shi zu** (Tai Sigung) Great Grandmaster

**Ta mo** (Dat Mo) The legendary founder of Zen (Chan) and kungfu. Tamo is short for Putitamo, a phonetic translation of Bodhidharma.

**Tan shou** (Tan sao) Palm up block

**Tan tui** (Tom Toy) Snap kick

**Tao lu** (Tow Low) Form, routine, pattern. See form.

**Ti** (Tet) Kick

**Tiao** (Tiew) Jump, leap

**Tie** (Tit) Iron. Used to preface hard qigong practices like iron hand or iron shirt.

**Tie da jiu** (Dit Da Jow) Also Tit Da Jow. Liniments made of healing herbs and rice wine used for the treatment of bruises, strains and sprains. Literally "fall, hit wine"

**Tie da zhang** (Dit Da Jang) A bonesetter. Many masters specialized in this unique school of healing which combines herbs, acupuncture, massage and qigong therapy.

**Tie shou** (Tip Sao) Sticky hands

**Tong zi** (Tong Ji) Boy. Used to preface youth exercises, like tongzигong (child work)

**Tui bu** (Tui Bo) Step back

**Tui Shou** (Toy Sau) Push hands. A sparring exercise in internal styles like Taijiquan. See Push Hands

**Wai bai tui** (Loy Hap Toy) Outside crescent kick

**Wai jia** (Loy Gar) External school

**Wu dang** (Mo Dang) a.k.a Wu Tang. A mountain and temple in Hubei, famous for internal kungfu.

**Wu de** (Mo Duk) Warrior's code or ethics

**Wu shu** (Mo I) Martial art

**Wu tai Shan** (Um Toy San) A Buddhist holy mountain of China in Shanxi Province. Literally "five platform peaceful mountain"

**Wu guan** (Mo Kwoon) A kungfu school, literally "martial hall"

**Wu xing** (Um Ying) Five forms, as in animals or elements. See Five elements.

**Xia** (Ha) Down, below

**Xiao** (Siu) Small

**Xie bu** (Kow Mah) Cross stance or twist stance

**Xie xie** (Dou Jie) Thank you

**Xing Yi** (Hsing-I) "Mind Form Boxing." An internal martial art of Chinese origin characterized by simple, direct body movements, forward, linear motion, and an emphasis on very strong strikes. Xing Yi is based on the Five Elements: earth, water, fire, metal, and wood.

**Xuan feng tui** (Sun Fung Toy) Tornado kick or flying inside crescent kick

**Xu bu** (Hoy Bo) Empty stance

**Yang** (Yeung) Positive aspect. See Yin and Yang  
**Yang Jia Taijiquan** (Yang Gar Tai Gik Kune) Yang Style Taijiquan. The most widely known style of Taijiquan in the world. Yang style in its most popular form was developed by Yang Chengfu, the grandson of the legendary fighter Yang Lucan, who learned his art from Chen Changxing in Chen village. The art as Yang Lucan practiced it is presumed to resemble Chen-style Taijiquan, but Yang Chengfu re-evaluated the art and developed it into a distinctly different style, replacing the changing tempos and rising and falling postures with a sedate, even tempo and uniformly large, open postures. The popular "Yang Long Form" consists of 108 postures.

**Yi** right, righteousness, duty: "Yi is one's own unique disposition to act according to li. One makes one's own meaning and personal identity. Meaning is fusion of external li and internal yi. Yi is acting appropriately in one's own situation.

**Yin** (Yuen) Negative aspect. See Yin and Yang

**Yin and Yang** Represented in one of the most widely-known symbols from Chinese culture, the concept of Yin and Yang lies at the heart of most of the arts of Kung Fu. Represented as a circle divided between a dark half and a light, the Taiji symbol represents two mutually complementary forces in nature: Yin, the force characterized as dark, cold, stillness, passiveness and potential; and Yang, the force characterized as light, warmth, action, aggressiveness and expression.

**Zhenci liaofa** (Jum gow) See Acupuncture

**Zhan Zhuang** (Jan Chen) "Stake Standing." A standing gong or exercise in which the practitioner stands motionless in a particular posture to develop internal strength. The internal Martial Arts incorporate several different versions of standing gongs, but all are used to develop a coordinated strength of the whole body for martial purposes.

**Zhang** (Jeurng) Palm

**Zheng tui** (Chin Toy) Front kick

**Zheng ti tui** (Chin Son Toy) Front stretch kick

**Zheng tan tui** (Chin Tom Toy) Front snap kick

**Zhi Shan** (Jik Seen) Centreline

**Zhong guo** (Jong Gok) China. Literally centre kingdom

**Zuo** (Jow) Go, do, act. Given as a command when beginning an exercise or bout.

**Zuo** (Cho) Sit

**Zuo pan** (Cho Pun) Crossed leg seated stance

# GLOSSARY OF TERMS USED IN ETHICS

**Abortion** The termination of a pregnancy by artificially induced means. Debates centre on whether an unborn human is a full or potential person and therefore receives full or partial rights, the extent of the mother's rights, the father's rights, whether women depend on access to abortion for full fertility control and therefore full emancipation into human society and the extent of autonomy in this area. Religious beliefs about life and the human being play a major part of the debate as does scientific factors such as the levels of pain felt by a foetus being aborted.

**Absolutism** The belief in a value or good that always holds its value. Expressed by the ancient stoics "Let justice be done though the heavens fall." Absolutism as an ethical theory is contrasted to relativism.

**Act Utilitarianism** A Teleological or consequentialist theory which uses the outcome of the particular action to determining its rightness or goodness. General rules can never force us to act if in a given situation better ends can be reached by doing something different. Jeremy Bentham was an act-utilitarian. It contrasts with rule-utilitarianism.

**Agape** Greek word meaning love but distinct from erotic love or familial love. Important for Christians as it is that kind of unconditional love which they must show their neighbours. It is also important for Joseph Fletcher's Situation ethics which claims that moral decision making must centre around determining the most agape-loving thing to do in a situation.

**Agapism** A religious formulation of Ethics of Love theory of morality which extends the imperative to love not only to humans but to God.

**Altruism** Acting out of selfless concern for others. Christians are commanded to love their neighbour as themselves. In ethics altruism can be contrasted with selfishness or egoism.

**Areté** The Greek word for "excellence"; or "virtue". The virtue of an Olympic swimmer is in swimming well, and the virtue of a national leader lies in motivating people to work for the common good.

**Argument** A set of statements consisting of premises and a conclusion.

**Autonomy** To freely determine one's own course in life, from the Greek words *autos* meaning self and *nomos* meaning rule. Autonomy was central for Kant. Without autonomy people cannot be morally responsible for their actions. It is usually contrasted with "heteronomy" meaning the rule by others. To believe people are autonomous is a position opposed to Determinism.

**Beneficent** To do good, to be actively kind.

**Benevolent** To be helpful, friendly.

**Bigamy** Marriage to a second wife when a previous marriage is in force. A crime in western countries but more common in Middle Eastern cultures.

**Business Ethics** The application of ethics to the roles and responsibilities of persons connected to the modern business corporation.

**Bioethics or Biomedical Ethics** The application of ethics to biological sciences, medicine, genetics, healthcare and public policy with regards to these areas. Judaism and Roman Catholicism have strong traditions regarding Bioethics and issues such as abortion, euthanasia, reproductive technologies, organ transplantation and human cloning are all included in this topic

**Calculus** A means of computing or calculating something. Usually used in ethics in reference to a moral calculus, a means of calculating the right moral decision in a particular situation. The **Hedonic Calculus** is a Utilitarian example of this.

**Capital Punishment** The use of the Death penalty as a punishment determined by a legally empowered Court. Traditionally there was some debate within the Christian tradition as to whether Capital Punishment was justifiable or not. Debates range over whether the commandment "Thou shall not kill" in fact only refers to murder to how it can be held alongside the Christian centrality of Love and the preservation of life. It is held as an effective deterrent and ultimate retribution where it is practised but those who oppose the death penalty site the dangers of potential miscarriages of justice and important of reform.

**Categorical Imperative** An unconditional command which, for Kant, told us our duty by pointing to actions which were good in themselves, and in the pursuit of the summum bonum (supreme good). For Kant this included his universalisability maxim "Always act in such a way that the maxim of your action can be willed as a universal law."

**Civil Disobedience** To disobey or resist the state because of a point of ethical principle. Mahatma Gandhi and Martin Luther King stand out as examples of leaders who practised Civil Disobedience against the British in India and civil rights for black people in the USA respectively. Henry David Thoreau is associated with this and his influential essay "Civil Resistance", "Must the citizen ever for a moment, or in the least degree, resign his conscience to the legislator? Why has every man a conscience then? I think that we should be men first, and subjects afterward. The only obligation which I have a right to assume is to do at any time what I think right."

**Civil Rights** Legally enforced and protected rights belonging to people by virtue of their citizenship of a state. Examples of Civil Rights are freedom of expression and of religious belief. Ethical debates included whether these rights proceed from human rights or natural rights. Great Civil Rights activists include Mahatma Ghandi and Martin Luther King.

**Communism** A movement which promotes a classless society with no private ownership.

**Compatibilism** The belief that it is possible to maintain both determinism and free will because while some aspects of our nature are determined, our ability to make moral decisions is not.

**Conscience** Aquinas called it "the mind of man making moral judgements." It is variously understood as meaning the voice of God within us (Butler), our sense of moral right and wrong or our super-ego enforcing the rules of behaviour implanted within us when we were young (Freud). Ethical issues surrounding conscience include the conflict between state law or religious belief and individual conscience (Civil Disobedience), the justification of conscience as a reason for moral behaviour and the difficulties in defining and relying on conscience as a guide for moral behaviour. Cardinal Newman said "I toast the Pope but I toast conscience first."

**Consequentialism** Any ethical view which establishes the rightness or wrongness of actions by the good or bad produced by its consequences.

**Corporal Punishment** The judicial, parental or educators use of violence/smacking/flogging as a valid form of punishment. Debates range

over whether parents have right to smack, whether courts can use physical forms of punishment, and whether teachers should be allowed to use it to maintain discipline. Advocators identify it as an effective form of retributive and deterrent punishment while those who oppose it claim it instils an ethic of violence and violates basic human rights.

**Cultural Relativism** The form of relativism which maintains that that which is good or bad, right or wrong, for a person varies in relation to the culture in which the person lives. These different values are equally valid because there are no moral absolutes. For example, polygamy is permitted in some Islamic societies but a criminal activity in most western societies. Neither position is more valid than the other. See also **Relativism**.

**Decalogue** (Deca [Greek]= ten. Logia = words) Name for the Ten Commandments, the traditional core ethical values for Jewish and Christian moral laws.

**Democracy** Rule by the people either directly (where each citizen votes on policy and so sovereignty rests with them) or representational (where citizens elect politicians and give them authority to make decisions of policy thereby giving sovereignty to the elected group).

**Deontology** Actions are intrinsically right or wrong. They are right or wrong in themselves and irrespective of their consequences. They are traditionally associated with Kantian duty but can also be linked to ethical systems which uphold absolute moral norms and human rights. Deontologists hold that one cannot undertake immoral acts like torture of spies even if the outcome is morally preferable, such as the early ending of a war. It is contrasted with Teleological/consequentialist ethical theories.

**Descriptive Ethics** A term for Ethics which does not advocate a particular moral outlook (as prescriptive ethics do) and does not seek to determine the rightness or wrongness of moral actions (as normative ethics do). Descriptive Ethics simply identifies and compares different ethical systems existing in different cultures. It is Anthropological in this sense.

**Deterrence** The idea that the purpose of punishment is to persuade others not to commit moral or legal crimes.

**Determinism** See hard Determinism, Compatibilism/Soft Determinism and Libertarianism and Free will.

**Direct lobbying** A systematic effort to meet face-to-face with elected officials in an effort to influence their vote on some piece of legislation, or otherwise communicate directly with such persons or their staff by telephone, mail, and e-mail.

**Divine Command Theory** The theory that maintains that actions are right or wrong depending on whether they correspond to God's commands or not.

**Double-Effect** A theory used to justify the termination of a foetus if the intention is to save the life of the mother and the action has the secondary effect of killing the foetus. Ectopic pregnancies, where the fertilised ovum lodges itself in the Fallopian Tube is an example of this. If the pregnancy continues the mother and foetus will die. The Double Effect theory morally justifies the removal of the Fallopian Tube because the intention is to save the mother's life even though the effect of doing so leads to the death of the foetus.

**Duty** A motive for acting in a certain way which indicates moral quality. It is



important in Kantian Ethics where doing good means rationally determining and then following Duty. For W D Ross, the Prima Facie Duties are a set of ultimate moral obligations which if followed will ensure we are acting morally. Duty was also important for the Naturalist F H Bradley who also felt that being good meant doing one's duty.

**Emotivism** A Descriptive ethical theory which holds that all moral judgements are simply expressions of positive or negative feelings and that as such all moral statements are meaningless as they cannot be verified. Made prominent by Logical positivists and the Vienna Circle, in particular, A J Ayer and C L Stevenson.

**Egoism** A moral theory that commonly states that each person ought to act in his or her own Self-interest.

**Empiricism** The theory that truth is verifiable by testable sense experience. In Ethics it is linked to Naturalism where moral truths can be scientifically proven.

**Ends and Means** Some moral systems evaluate the goodness and badness of actions solely by examining their means (actions), while others examine the consequences, the ends produced by those actions. See as Teleological ethics, consequentialism, utilitarianism and deontology.

**Enlightenment** The intellectual movement in modern Europe from the sixteenth until the eighteenth centuries that maintained that human reason could understand the world and guide all human conduct.

**Epicureanism** The ancient Greek movement which held that the good life is gained by the sensible and moderate pursuit of pleasure.

**Ethical egoism** Ethical theory postulating that an action is right if it benefits one's own self.

**Ethical legalism** The notion that morality is based on adherence to a set of laws or rules.

**Ethics** Ethics (sometimes known as moral philosophy) asks the following sorts of questions: How should we live? What is right and what is wrong? What do we mean by the word right and the word good? How can we measure goodness and badness? Are some things always wrong or does it depend on the point of view or situation? Ethical theory examines the different philosophies or systems used to explain and make judgements about right/wrong/good/bad. Practical or Applied Ethics is more focussed on subjects that invite ethical questioning such as abortion and euthanasia.

Ethics is from Greek word ethikos, from root ethos meaning character. Ethical Theory is subdivided into 3: Normative ethics, which asks whether actions are right or wrong; Descriptive or comparative ethics, which simply compares and describes differing ethical practices; Metaethics, the study of the meaning of ethical language, the definitions of words such as good, right, etc.

**Ethics of Love** Moral theory postulating that right actions are those based on love for others.

**Eugenics** A political and ideological movement, which had its heyday before World War II, aiming at the genetic improvement of the human race.

**Eudaimonia** Aristotle uses this word for "happiness"; or "flourishing". from the Greek "eu"; meaning "happy" or "well" or "harmonious" and "daimon" meaning the individual's spirit.

**Euthanasia** Literally meaning a good death. Used to describe the doctor assisted death for a patient with a painful terminal condition, the switching off of life support machines for those in comas, the killing of the elderly or disabled. Ethical debates range over the right ever to take life, the right to choose the manner and time of death with dignity and the safe application of legalised Euthanasia. The Voluntary Euthanasia Society advocates legal reform in Britain while the Roman Catholic Church opposes all forms of Euthanasia.

**Extinction** Reducing an undesirable behaviour by having absolutely no consequence, positive or negative, associated with the behaviour.

**Extrinsic Good** Something which is good, not within itself but because of the goodness/badness of the effects it has.

**Fate/Fatalism** Fate is the concept that there is a force or law influencing or controlling human affairs. A religious variant of Determinism.

**Formalist** synonym with deontological ethics. Category of moral theories claiming that the rightness of an action depends on the form of the action.

**Freedom/ Free Will** Freedom a pre-necessity of moral responsibility. You must arguably be free to act to be morally responsible for your actions. Libertarians hold that we are free to act morally.

**Free speech** A basic right guaranteed by the U.S. and other democratic constitutions. While strictly speaking it refers to one's ability to articulate one's own opinions in speech or writing, it is often extrapolated -- especially in the U.S. -- to include other forms of influencing people's opinions (e.g., the ability to contribute money to political campaigns or to advertise certain products).

**Grassroots lobbying** When an organisation encourages citizens to contact their elected representatives to support or oppose a piece of legislation, instead of directly communicating as an organization with the elected official.

**Golden Rule Theory** The maxim that we should act morally as we would expect to be treated. It is found in various ancient and modern sources, most notable Christian: "Do unto others as you would have them do unto you".

Thomas Hobbes held that we only act morally because we don't want to be acted against in an immoral way. Moral behaviour has selfish roots.

**Good / Goodness** Ethics that questions definitions of the Good are known as Metaethics. Plato held that the good was an absolute that existed in a truer form than the things we perceive around us. Relativists hold that goodness is determined by the traditional value system of a given culture. Trying to define and determine what the good is the preoccupation of the student of ethics.

**Hard Determinism** The belief that people do not have free will to act in moral situations, that all moral actions have uncontrollable prior causes.

Determinism has the difficulty that if people are not free to act morally then it seems unreasonable to hold them responsible for their actions.

**Hedonic Calculus** Bentham's Utilitarian computation by which the good and bad effects of an action can be measured.

**Hedonism** The belief that pleasure is the chief "good."

**Heteronomy** The opposite of autonomy. An autonomous person is self-determined, while a heteronomous person is not free to act but influenced or

controlled by something outside of the person. For Kant if we are controlled by our emotions we are not acting morally because we are not free to make a rational decision. Etymologically, *hetero* is Greek for "other"; and *nomos* is Greek for "law"

**Humanistic moral theories** Secular moral theories which also emphasize a respect or concern for the welfare and the rights of human individuals.

**Human Rights.** See Rights.

**Hypothetical Imperative.** A conditional, "if", command, such as, "If you want to lose weight, go on a diet." Some philosophers claimed that morality is only a system of hypothetical imperatives, while others, such as Kant, maintained that morality is a matter of categorical imperatives. See **categorical imperative**.

**Idea/ Form** Plato absolutes which he thought were the real things in the universe and were immortal and beyond our senses. For Plato the good life involved the pursuit of these Ideas or Form, using philosophical enquiry. By pursuing them we would eventually perceive goodness itself, the supreme Idea.

**Ignorance** Aquinas thought that you were not morally responsible for your actions if you could not reasonably know that what you do is wrong.

**Immoral/ immorality** An Immoral act is one that is considered bad or wrong.

**Impartiality** A position which treats everyone equally or objectively.

Impartiality is arguably an essential component of the moral point of view so that in judging moral actions or situations human beings should be treated equally.

**Imperative** A command. Philosophers often distinguish between

**hypothetical imperatives** and **categorical imperatives**

**Inclination** The word that Kant used to refer to our feelings, emotions, and desires which contrast with reason. Inclination was seen as physical, causally-determined, and irrational, while reason was portrayed as non-physical, free, and obviously rational.

**Indirect euthanasia** The act of hastening death as a side-effect of medical treatment.

**Individualism** Theories which centre on the importance, rights or centrality of the individual as opposed to communitarianism which focuses on those of the group. Margaret Thatcher famously said "There is no such thing as society" to emphasize the importance of the individual in commerce. The United States embodies rights of the individual in its Constitution. In ethics the distinction between the two is important in discussions on the purpose of Justice.

Individualism is also an issue in religious and cultural studies (compare American Individualism with the Japanese Group ethos, or the Christian search for individual salvation and the Islamic concept of the rights of the community).

**Integrationist** A position which attempts to reconcile apparently conflicting tendencies or values into a single framework or system. Integrationist positions are contrasted with separatist positions, which advocate keeping groups (usually defined by race, ethnicity, or gender) separate from one another. The Apartheid regime in South Africa was Separatist, advocating separate communities for blacks and whites, separate public transport systems, etc.

**Intention** In ethics, questions can be asked about whether intentions make a difference to the moral value of the action. If they do then it could be argued that to give to charity to show off or to gain praise is a right action for the wrong reason. For consequentialist theories of ethics intention is important as intention is what you hope to achieve by the action - Arguably all moral actions have an element of this. For Kant, intention can make all the difference as acting out of feelings is wrong, while acting using reason to perceive duty is right.

**Intrinsically Good** Good in itself, without reference to consequences. See extrinsically good.

**Intuitionism or ethical non-naturalism** A Metaethical theory which states that moral truths are known by intuition, a special kind of perception.

**Justice** Ethical debates in this area surround the definition of justice and how to make justice operate effectively in the community. There are two main theories. Individualistic theories maintain that communities are made up of individuals and therefore justice should preserve the rights of individuals. Individualism is characterised by Margaret Thatcher's claim that "there is no such thing as society" and Thomas Hobbes' theory that individuals make rules to live by for selfish reasons - that it is in their best interest. Communitarian theories hold that society is more than the sum of its parts and has some organic dimension. Plato recognised the importance of community in his city-state. Marx, MacIntyre and John Rawls developed communitarian theories of justice.

**Karma** The eastern religious "law" of action and reaction, cause and effect, by which an individual's actions combine to produce related results for that individual in the present and future lives.

**Kingdom of Ends** This term was used by Kant to describe a world in which people acted, not in a way which treated others as means but rather only as ends.

**Law** A moral or legal code of conduct. It can be used to refer to legislation of the state (Acts of Parliament in the UK), Church rules (Canon Law in the Catholic Church), moral guidelines either written in nature or the hearts of all people (Aquinas) or simply developed individually as part of a person value system. Ethical debates which mention law may be in discussions of whether natural or absolute laws exist outside human created ideas, whether they should be applied universally or according to legal custom, and the reconciliation between laws of the state and moral laws.

**Legalism** An ethical system which contains rules for every situation and/or the association of doing good by simply following those rules.

**Libertarianism** The view that humans are free to make moral choices and are therefore responsible for their actions. An opposite stance to determinism.

**Love** A key concept in Christian Ethics where people must love their neighbour as they do themselves. It is also important for Situation Ethics wherein it forms the central rule by which moral behaviour valued is assessed - what is the most loving thing to do. The kind of love here is Agape, meaning unconditional love, which is not dependant of any return and is very different from the love of family and erotic love.

**Maxim** A moral rule which according to Kant was the subjective rule that an individual uses in making a decision.

**Means** Another term for actions. In Ethics, "means" are often contrasted with "ends" so that some ethical theories focus on the intrinsic goodness of an action while others look at the consequences of actions.

**Medical ethics** See Bioethics

**Metaethics** The study of the meaning of ethical statements and terms such as "good", "bad", "right" and "wrong."

**Moral Philosophy** See Ethics

**Moral Rights** See Rights.

**Moral Relativism** See Relativism

**Morality** Morality comes from the Latin word *Moralis* - concerned with which actions are right and which are wrong, rather than the character of the person. Today morality and ethics are often used interchangeably.

**Motives** See Intentions

**Natural (Moral) Law** Ethical theories which hold that there is a good natural order to the human world which ought to be adhered to. The Natural order is determined either by a deity or some other supernatural power. The origins of Natural law in the west go back as far as the ancient Greeks (Sophocles, Antigone) but are famously developed by Thomas Aquinas who deduced that the fundamental natural law was to protect oneself and protect the innocent and that from these can be derived the rules, to live, to procreate, to create a civil society and to worship God. The Roman Catholic Church is a prominent exponent of Natural Moral Law today and this is manifested in its teaching against the use of artificial contraception.

**Naturalism** The theory that moral values can be derived from sense experience. Naturalists believe statements of fact (is) can imply statements of moral obligation (ought). The contrary Ethical position is Ethical Non naturalism or ethical non-cognitivism. See also naturalistic Fallacy.

**Naturalistic Fallacy** G. E. Moore's claim that good cannot be defined as it is simple and indefinable. Moore famously compared it to yellow, which, if defined was no longer yellow.

**Noncognitivism** The belief that moral judgements or exclamations do not have truth value and therefore cannot be known. An example of this is emotivism.

**Nonsequentialism** Another word for Deontological Ethical theories.

**Normative Ethics** See Ethics

**Nuclear disarmament** Getting rid of nuclear weapons, such as the atom bomb.

**Objectivism** Truth is objectively real irrespective of individual or cultural viewpoint or value system. Things that are right and wrong are absolutely right and wrong.

**Obedience / disobedience** To follow orders or instruction. In ethics there are dilemmas about obedience to authority and when not to obey (civil disobedience and conscientious objection) and obedience to conscience.

**Omission, Sin of** The idea that we can do wrong through inaction as well as doing actively bad things. For example if we refuse to help someone clearly in need of help when we can give it to save their life then we are doing wrong

through inaction. In some countries failing to stop at a Road Traffic Accident is a crime. Global justice issues in ethics identify the possibility that rich Westerners are continually doing wrong by failing to save the lives of those round the world who are starving by giving up their wealth to help the poor.

**Original Position** A situation where a group of people must devise a set of rules guaranteeing quality for all members of that society without knowing what role they will have in that society.

**Particularity** Can be contrasted with universality and impartiality. Ethical discussions debate how adequate recognition can be given to the particular which refers to close allegiances, friendships, loyalties and individual hopes and desires in life. These particulars are usually seen as morally irrelevant to the rational moral self.

**Phronesis** According to Aristotle, Phronesis is practical wisdom, the ability to make the right decision in difficult circumstances.

**Personalism** The ethic that demands that human beings are not treated as "means" (Kant) but are subjects. Personalism argues that human are interrelational social beings, part of the physical and spiritual world. Personalism affirms self conscious experience. Ultimately it puts the person in the centre of any moral or ethical dilemma.

**Pluralism** The theory that there are many valid perspectives on an issue which individually hold part but not all of the truth. In ethics, moral pluralism holds that different moral theories each capture part of truth about moral life but not all of it. It is distinct from relativism as it does not necessarily give equal validity to all theories and nor does it rule out of the possibility that there is one truth, simply that the truth is spread throughout a number of theories.

**Practical or Applied Ethics** The study of Ethical issues such as abortion, justice, as opposed to purely ethical theories like natural moral law and utilitarianism.

**Prescriptivism** An ethical theory which contains that moral statements are not simply describing an opinion but have an intrinsic sense that others ought to agree and follow that moral view. Contrasts with descriptive ethics and to some extent emotivism.

**Prima Facie** (Latin "at first glance") In ethics it is associated with W D Ross and his prima Facie Duties. A prima facie duty which must be followed unless a stronger duty exists which may override it.

**Proportionality / Proportionalism** The concept of proportionality is found in Thomas Aquinas' consideration of the Just War theory. He argued that warring activity should be proportionate to the aggression made and not excessive to that aggression. It is present in modern formulations of the just war theory and questions actions like the Atomic bombing of Hiroshima and Nagasaki in WW2. It is also found in the RC teaching on Euthanasia which holds that while Euthanasia is wrong, the excessive or over burdensome treatment of terminally ill patients may be wrong especially if the pain caused is disproportionate to the result of the procedure. Proportionalism is a relatively new theory which tries to bridge the gap between the traditional Christian Natural Law ethic and the modern relativist Christian ethic, Situationism. It maintains that there are basic moral laws which are only broken in extreme circumstances. See also Situationism, Natural Moral Law.

**Proportional representation** A system of election that provides for

representation in a legislative body based on the percentage of votes a party receives in an election; the opposite of a winner-take-all system based on a single person winning each separate district (a form of representation that usually favours a two party system and shuts out third or minor parties from being represented at all).

**Psychologism Egoism** The doctrine that all human motivation is ultimately selfish or egoistic.

**Punishment** An unpleasant or aversive stimulus presented to a subject as a consequence of behaviour done in response to some antecedent.

**Rationalism** A theory popular in the 17th and 18th which holds that it is possible to determine what truly exists by reason alone, and that all things are explicable using reason. In more recent times it is associated with the rejection of religious beliefs, faith or any belief system considered irrational. See also Logical Positivism, motivism.

**Realism** Traditionally, ethical realism holds that moral facts exist. The term also describes the theory that in fact it is never possible to make good choices as sin is present in all people and therefore we ultimately have to choose between the lesser of two evils.

**Relativism** Relativism takes several forms. *Descriptive ethical relativism* maintains that different cultures and societies have differing ethical systems. *Normative ethical relativism* claims that each culture's beliefs or value system are right within that culture, and that it is impossible to validly judge another culture's values externally or objectively. As such there are no absolute moral norms. Some relativists hold that moral absolutes may exist but that they are unknowable. J. L. Mackie is a famous contemporary Relativist philosopher.

**Reproductive Technologies** Technology which controls fertility and reproduction including artificial contraception and IVF.

**Retribution** The theory that punishment should in some way repay the damage done by the crime.

**Rights** Entitlements to do something without interference from other people, granted by divine, natural or secular authority by virtue of being human or being the citizen of a state.

**Rule Utilitarianism** Instead of looking at the consequences of a particular act, Rule Utilitarians first establish the best general course of action to follow in these circumstances and then always follows that course. So the general rule of driving on the left hand side of the road is established as the best rule to follow in Britain even though in a particular instance the left lane is slow moving while the other lane is empty. John Stuart Mill is an example of a Rule Utilitarian. See also Act -Utilitarianism and Utilitarianism.

**Sexual Ethics** Ethical issues related to sex including pre-marital sex, extra marital sex, homosexuality, contraception, masturbation, contraception etc.

**Situation Ethics / Situationism** An alternative Christian ethical theory promulgated by Joseph Fletcher in the 1960s that rejected legalistic codes of ethics in favour of a more relativist model. Fletcher argued that the morally right thing to do was that which was most loving in that particular situation. The love Fletcher meant was agape or unconditional love. The theory has been rejected by some Christian Churches, most notable the Catholic Church. Proportionalism is a more moderate form of situation ethics.

**Slippery Slope Argument** In ethics this is used to describe the dangers of theories which allow for moral laws to be broken in certain circumstances. The dangers are stated as being that once lesser moral laws are broken, greater ones are then broken and ultimately all moral absolutes are abandoned.

Situation ethics is identified as a theory which could overstep certain ethical boundaries. In applied Ethics, some argue that to legalise euthanasia would eventually lead to the justification of all sorts of dubious moral practices including infanticide.

**Social Contract** An arrangement whereby all members of a community agree to restrict their freedoms so as to allow the most liberty for everyone.

**State of Nature** The original state which human beings live in. Identified by Hobbes as being a state of aggressive war which must be overcome by a social contract and conversely argued to be a state of pre-civilised paradise by Rousseau.

**Subjectivism** An extreme version of relativism, which argues that each person's values and beliefs are relative to that person alone and cannot be judged externally or objectively.

**Supererogatory** To act above or beyond the call of duty. A supererogatory act is morally good and goes beyond what is required by duty.

**Supernaturalism** See Divine Command Theory.

**Teleological Ethics** Theories which establish the rightness or wrongness of a given act by consideration of the consequences. see consequentialism, Utilitarianism

**Ten Commandments** Moral code handed directly by God to Hebrew tribal leader Moses on Mount Sinai, according to Judeo-Christian tradition.

**Totalitarian** Related to a system of government which exercises absolute control over all aspects of life, where the individual is subordinated to the state, and where independent political and cultural expression is suppressed.

**Universalisability** A moral law which can be obeyed every time everywhere. Kant maintained that the only maxims which are morally good are those which can be universalized.

**Utilitarianism / the Utility theory** A teleological theory that maintains that an action is right if it produces the greatest good for the greatest number.

Formulated by Jeremy Bentham and developed by John Stuart Mill, Utilitarianism measures the potential goodness produced with the Hedonic Calculus and thereby draws conclusions about which action is the best. Deontological theories are contrary to this theory. Critics point out that it provides no justice for minorities and ignores the possibility of intrinsically bad acts like torturing babies. See also Act Utilitarianism, Rule Utilitarianism, Consequentialism.

**Value system** A fixed set of ethical and moral beliefs and practices usually associated with a world view of truth, life and death. It may be part of a religious belief system or a secular ideology.

**Values/Value Judgement** A Value is traditionally known as a good, a moral principle. A value judgement is an estimate of the moral worth of an action.

**Vice** To habitually do what is wrong.

**Virtue/Virtue Ethics** To habitually do what is right. Virtue Ethics is a theory



that claims that being good requires the practice of a certain kind of behaviours. Aristotle advanced Virtue ethics and it has been recently redefined by Alasdair MacIntyre. Debates range on how we determine what these ethical virtues are and whether being good is something we can practice at all.

## HINDUISM GLOSSARY



The main references are to Sanskrit terminology, although variants are found and used in other Indian languages. Lakshmi, Laksmi, Vishnu or Vis Visnu type variants are not always included because of their frequency. Many of these terms will also be found in books on Buddhism and Sikhism, but with somewhat different meanings. Proper names and place names are only included in this list if variant forms are commonly used.

**PREFERRED FORM MAIN VARIANTS EXPLANATION** The preferred or most frequently used term is in bold.

**Acharya** Acarya One who teaches by example. Usually refers to a prominent or exemplary spiritual teacher.

**Advaita** Vedanta Adwaita Non-dualism. Teaches that the individual soul and God are not different. Refers to the impersonalistic philosophy which unqualifyingly equates God, the soul and matter.

**Ahimsa** Ahinsa Not killing. Non-violence; respect for life.

**Antima Kriya** The final rites, the cremation of the body; the final samskara

**Artha** Economic development. The second aim of life. The accumulation of wealth, one of the aims of the life.

**Arti** Welcoming ceremony in which auspicious articles such as incense and lamps are offered to the deity or to saintly people in clockwise manner in front of the deity.

**Aryan** Noble. Refers to those who know the spiritual values of life. Scholars say it refers to the original inhabitants of the Sindhu region in India.

**Ashram** Asram A place set up for spiritual development.

**Ashrama** Asrama A stage of life (of which there are four) adopted according to material considerations, but ultimately as a means to spiritual realisation.

**Atharva Veda** The fourth of the Vedas.

**Atman** Atma Self. Can refer to body, mind or soul, depending on context. Ultimately, it refers to the real self, the soul. The ultimate reality manifesting itself as the "I" in the individual; the real self.

**Aum** Om The sacred symbol and sound representing the ultimate; the most sacred of Hindu words.

**Avatar** Avatara Avtara One who descends. Refers to the descent of a deity, most commonly Vishnu. Sometimes it is translated as incarnation which, although inaccurate, may be the best English word available. God descends to earth to infuse spirituality into society. Vishnu is believed to have incarnated ten times.

**Ayodhya** Birthplace of Rama also a popular place of pilgrimage.

**Bhagavad Gita** The Song of the Lord. Spoken by Krishna, this is the most important scripture for most Hindus. Tradition dates it back to 3,000 years BCE, though most scholars attribute it to the first millennium BCE. Considered an Upanishad.

**Bhajan** Bhajana Devotional hymn or song.

**Bhakta** A devotee to God

**Bhakti** Devotion; strong love for God. Devotional approach to a spiritual form of Hinduism.

**Bhakti-yoga** The path of loving devotion, aimed at developing pure love of God.

**Brahma** A Hindu deity, considered one of the Trimurti, and in charge of creative power; not to be confused with Brahman or Brahmin.

**Brahmachari** Brahmachari Brahmacharin Brahmcarin One in the first stage of life, a celibate student of Vedic knowledge. one who practises celibacy

**Brahmacharya** Brahmacharya Brahma ch(c)ari Brahma ch(c)arin The first ashrama or stage of life.

**Brahman** The ultimate reality, or the all-pervading reality; that from which everything emanates, in which it rests and into which it is ultimately dissolved.

**Brahmin** Brahman Brahmana The first of the four varnas, the principal social groupings from which priests are drawn. Some writers, rather confusingly, use the spelling 'brahman', and the meaning only becomes clear in the context of a few sentences (see also Brahman and Brahma).

**Camphor** Paraffin- like substance burnt during the puja ceremony; signifies the burning of the ego.

**Consciousness** The innermost nature of every living thing

**Dana** Act of giving ; charity

**Darshan** "to catch sight of "; refers to visiting a holy place to see the image of God

**Darshan Shastras** Six systems of Hindu philosophy- Nyaya, Vaisheshika, Sankhya, Yoga, Vedanta and Meemansa.

**Dassehra** Dussehra, Dassera, Dashara (Other variants are also found) Ten days. Also called Vijay Dashami. Celebrates the victory of good over evil. Goddess Durga and Lord Rama prevail over the demons on the tenth day of the bright half of the lunar month of Jyeshtha. As is often the case with Hindu festivals, followers may interpret the festival differently, eg in connection with Durga (see Navaratri). Prayers for blessings and favour are offered.

**Dharma** Religion or religious duty is the usual translation into English, but literally it means the intrinsic quality of the self or that which sustains one's existence.

**Dhoti** A garment made of natural fibre (usually cotton or silk), worn by males, which covers the lower body and legs.

**Dhyana** Meditation.

**Diwali** Diwali, Dipavali, Deepavali Festival of lights at the end of one year and beginning of the new year, according to one Hindu calendar.

**Durga** Female deity. A form of the goddess Parvati; wife of Shiva.

**Dvaita** Dvaita Dual. Refers to the personalistic philosophy that differentiates between God, the soul and matter. The dualistic form of Vedanta, teaches that the individual soul, the universe and God are three separate independent categories.

**Dwarka** Dvarka Dvaraka Dwaraka Pilgrimage site on the west coast of India.

**Fasting** Total or partial abstinence from food; an austerity practised for spiritual merit on certain auspicious days of the Hindu calendar.

**Ganesha** Ganesh Ganupati Ganapati A Hindu deity portrayed with an elephant's head - a sign of strength. The deity who removes obstacles and good luck shown with a mouse as a vehicle and holding sweets to symbolise the sweet nature of the divine

**Ganesa Chaturthi** festival honouring the god of prosperity, prudence and success. Images of Ganesa are worshipped.

**Ganga** The Ganges. Most famous of all sacred rivers of India.

**Ganga Dussehra** honouring of the sacred river Ganga which flows from the Himalayas **Gangotri** Source of the river Ganges.

**Garba** Communal folk dance dedicated to Goddess Durga during festival of Navratri performed to invoke inner strength

**Ghee** melted butter

**Gita Jayanti** celebration of birthday of Srimad Bhagavad Gita and the revelation of the Gospel of Dharma to the world.

**Gotra** Exogamous group within Jati.

**Grihastha** Grihasti Grhastha The second stage of Hindu life; one who belongs to that stage, ie, the householder (grihasti).

**Guna** Rope; quality. Specifically refers to the three qualities of sattva (goodness), rajas (passion) and tamas (ignorance), which permeate and control matter.

**Guru** Spiritual teacher, preceptor or enlightener.

**Guru Purnima** celebration of the ancient Gurus, in particular Sage Ved Vyas. A Guru is seen as a remover of darkness, a teacher. The date is the full moon of the month Asadha.

**Hanuman** The monkey warrior who faithfully served Rama and Sita. Also called Pavansuta (son of the wind God).

**Hanuman Jayanti** celebration of Hanuman who was an embodiment of Lord Rama. Devotion and selfless work are encouraged.

**Havan** Also known as Agnihotra. The basis of many Hindu rituals used at weddings and on other ceremonial occasions; the ceremony or act of worship in which offerings of ghee and grains are made into fire.

**Havan kund** The container, usually square or pyramid-shaped, in which the havan fire is burned.

**Hitopadesh** Stories with a moral.

**Hindu** A word derived from the mispronunciation of the name of the river Sindhu.

**Holi** The festival of colours, celebrated in Spring is related to the puranic story of Prahlad being saved by Vishnu. It is observed in a colourful and boisterous manner. People shower each other with coloured water and smear red and green powder on each other.

**Homa** Term often used interchangeably with havan.

**The International Society for Krishna Consciousness (ISKCON)** A religious group of the Vaishnava tradition.

**Incense** Used in the puja ceremony; it burns and gives forth a sweet scent; also release a gentle smoke that permeates the room, symbolically linked to the way that God permeates the universe

**Janeu** Jenoī Sacred thread worn by Hindus who study under a guru.  
**Janmashtami** Janmashtmi The birthday of Krishna, celebrated on the eighth day of the waning moon in the month of Badra. Nightlong prayers are held in the Temples. A two day observance.  
**Japa** Jap The quiet or silent repetition of a mantra as a meditative process.  
**Jati** Caste is the usual translation, meaning occupational kinship group.  
**Jnana** Gyan Knowledge.  
**Jnana-yoga** Gyan-yoga The path of knowledge, that aims at liberation.

**Kali** Kaali Name given to that power of God which delivers justice - often represented by the Goddess Kali (a form of Durga).  
**Kali yuga** The fourth of the ages; the iron age or the age of quarrelling and hypocrisy.  
**Kama** The third of the four aims of life - regulated sense of enjoyment.  
**Karma** (Law of Action). Used of work to refer to the law of cause and effect. "What you sow is what you will reap"  
**Karma-yoga** The path of self-realisation through dedicating the fruits of one's work to God.  
**Kirtan** Songs of praise; corporate devotional singing, usually accompanied by musical instruments.  
**Krishna** Usually considered an avatar of Vishnu (the eighth reincarnation of Vishnu). One of the most popular of all Hindu deities in contemporary Britain. His teachings are found in the Bhagavad Gita.  
**Krishna Jayanti** (Sri Krishna Janmashtami) commemoration of the birth of Krishna - the 8th incarnation of god Vishnu who took the form of Krishna to destroy the evil king Kansa.  
**Kshatriya** Khatri Second of the four varnas of traditional Hindu society, the ruling or warrior class.

**Lakshmi** Laksmi The goddess of fortune; the consort of Vishnu.  
**Lanka** modern day Sri Lanka, an island off the south east coast of India.

**Mahabharata** The Hindu epic that relates the story of five Pandava princes. It includes the Bhagavad Gita.  
**Maha Shivaratri** festival in honour of Lord Shiva and his marriage to Goddess Parvati. Ceremonies involving prayers and hymns take place mostly at night. Special foods are not used.  
**Makar Sakranti** celebration marking turning of the sun toward the north. Observed by flying kites, feeding the poor and offering libations to the dead.  
**Mala** Maala Circle of stringed (108) beads of wood or wool used in meditation.  
**Mandala** Mandal A circle, area or community/group.  
**Mandir** A Hindu Temple.  
**Mantra** That which delivers the mind. Refers to a short sacred text or prayer, often recited repetitiously.  
**Manusmriti** The laws of Manu. An ancient and important text on Dharma, including personal and social laws.  
**Marg** Path, a way to God (see Jnana yoga, Karma yoga and Bhakti yoga).  
**Mata** Mother. Often associated with Hindu goddesses who represent shakti (power).  
**Mathura** Holy place connected with Krishna

**Maya** Not this. Usually, it refers to illusion, particularly where the permanent soul identifies itself with temporary matter, eg the body, etc. It can also mean power.

**Moksha** Moksa Ultimate liberation from the process of transmigration, the continuous cycle of birth and death.(Destruction of delusion, ends cycle of Rebirth becomes one with God

**Mundan** The head-shaving ceremony. Performed in the first or third year of life.

**Murti** Moorti Form. The image of a deity used as a focus of worship. 'Idol' should definitely not be used, and 'statue' may also cause offence.

**Namsaste** A salutation meaning : reverence to "you as God"

**Nataraja** "The lord of the dance" Shiva shown in the cosmic dance of creation holds a drum symbolic of creation of fire, a symbol of destruction

**Navaratri** Navaratra The Nine Nights Festival preceding Dassehra, and held in honour of the goddess Durga Also observed as a celebration recalling the days of Lord Krishna.

**Nirvana** The cessation of material existence.

**Panchatantra** Part of the supplementary Vedic scriptures, composed of animal stories with a moral.

**Parvati** The consort of Shiva, the personification of power shakti also known by other names such as Durga, Devi, etc.

**Prahlada** Prahalada A great devotee of Vishnu, connected with the festival of Holi. Regulation of breath as a means of controlling the mind.

**Pranayam** Pranayama Regulation of breath as a means of controlling the body, mind and spirit.

**Prashad** Prasad Prasada Prashada Sacred or sanctified food.

**Pravachan** A lecture or talk, usually based on the scriptures.

**Puja** Pooja Worship. General term referring to a variety of practices in the home or Mandir.

**Purana** Ancient. Part of the Smriti scriptures. Contains many of the well-known stories of Hinduism.

**Raas** Communal folk dance as depicted in the stories of Radha Krishna

**Raja Yoga** Raj Yoga Path of self-control and meditation to realise God.

**Rajas** Passion or creative potency, one of the three gunas (qualities of material nature).

**Rakhi** Raakhi A bracelet, usually made out of silk or cotton, tied to give protection and to strengthen the bond of mutual love.

**Raksha Bandhan** The festival when women tie a decorative bracelet on their brothers' wrists to honour the loving ties between brothers and sister in a family.

**Rama** The incarnation of the Lord, and hero of the Ramayana (avoid using the variant 'Ram' for obvious reasons).

**Ramayana** Ramayan The Hindu epic that relates the story of Rama and Sita, composed by the sage Valmiki thousands of years ago.

**Rama Krishna Jayanti** (Sri Krishna Jayanati) celebration of the birthday of Sri Krishna, an incarnation of Lord Krishna. Sweets, fruits and milk products are available in abundance.

**Ramnavami** Ramnavmi The birthday festival of Rama.. The day involves telling of stories and going to the temple.

**Rangoli** Elaborate designs traced on doorstep at the time of Diwali

**Reincarnation** A belief that the individual soul is born again and again, the cycle of rebirth only ends when the individual attains Moksha

**Rig Veda** Rg or Rc Veda The first scripture of Hinduism, containing spiritual and scientific knowledge.

**Rishi** Rsi, risi A spiritually wise person. More specifically, one of the seven seers who received the divine wisdom.

**Sadhana** Sadhan One's regulated spiritual practices or discipline.

**Sadhu** Saddhu Holy man, ascetic.

**Sama** Literally means "a chant" or melody in Sanskrit

**Sama Veda** One of the four Vedas of chanting; material mainly from the Rig Veda, arranged for ritual chanting in worship.

**Samsara** Sansara The world - the place where transmigration (the soul's passage through a series of lives in different species) occurs. A theory of reincarnation

**Samskar** Sanskar, Samskara Sacraments designed to initiate a new stage of life. There is usually a total of sixteen such rites of passage (though many schools of thought do not practise them all).

**Sanatan Dharma** The eternal or imperishable religion; also known as Vedic Dharma. Adherents often prefer this term to Hinduism since it characterises their belief in the revealed and universal nature of religion.

**Sannyasa** The state of renunciation, the fourth stage of life.

**Sannyasin** Samyasin, Samnyasin A renunciate who, having given up worldly affairs and attachments, has entered the fourth stage of life, often as a mendicant.

**Sanskrit** Sacred language of the Hindu scriptures.

**Saptapadi** The Seven steps taken together during the marriage ceremony

**Saraswati** The power of knowledge, often represented by the goddess

**Saraswati** The goddess of learning art and music.

**Sari** a long cloth worn by a Hindu woman; it is wrapped round the waist and passed over the shoulder.

**Sati** The act whereby a widow chooses to burn herself alive on the funeral pyre of her husband.

**Sattva** Sattwa Truthfulness, knowledge and Goodness, or the potency to sustain and nourish; one of the three gunas.

**Satya** The word for truth

**Seva** Sewa Service, either to the divine or to humanity.

**Shaivism** Saivism. A branch of Hinduism which worships Siva as the principal deity.

**Shakti** Sakti Energy or power, especially of a Hindu feminine deity.

**Shiva** Siva (many variants – even Civa - have been found) A Hindu god. The name means kindly or auspicious.

**Shivaratri** Sivaratri The annual festival celebrated in February/March in honour of Shiva. Also called Mahashivaratri. Hindu worship of Shiva with flowers.

**Shradh** The period of mourning for departed soul

**Shraddha** Sraddha Ceremony in which sanctified food is offered to the poor and needy in memory of departed ancestors.

**Shree Krishan Jayanti** (Janmastami) celebration of the physical courage and mental brilliance of Krishna, great saviour and founder of dharma, the religious and moral law of Hinduism.

**Shri** Sri Illustrious. Used as a title of respect, eg, Shri Krishna. Also a respectful title for men. The feminine form is Shrimati (Mrs).

**Smriti** Srti That which is remembered. Scriptures less ancient than the Vedas. Includes the Ramayana & Mahabharata.

**Sita** Seeta The divine consort of Rama.

**Sri Ramakrishna Jayanti** celebration of the life of Sri Ramakrishna whose life was a constant contemplation of God. He exemplified the best in seers of India.

**Shruti** Srti, Srti That which is heard. A term specifically applied to the four Vedas, including the Upanishads.

**Spirituality** the subject matter of religions and sciences

**Sutra** Sutta Short sayings or verses relating to various rituals, or encapsulating profound philosophical meaning.

**Swami** Svami Controller. Sometimes, more specifically, Goswami (one who can control his/her senses). An honorific title applied to a religious teacher or holy person, particularly the sannyasi.

**Swastika** Svastika From the Sanskrit for well-being; a mark of good fortune. The four arms signify the four directions (space), the four Vedas (knowledge), and the four stages (time) in the life cycle. Not to be confused with the Nazi symbol.

**Tamas** Ignorance, laziness, dullness or destructive potency; the lowest of the three gunas.

**Tilak** A mark of the forehead; symbol to awaken spirituality

**Tirtha** A 'crossing over place' name applied to places of pilgrimage.

**Trimurti** The three deities. Refers to Brahma, Vishnu and Shiva, who personify and control the three gunas. They represent and control the three functions of creation, preservation and destruction. 'Trinity' should be avoided.

**Tulsedas Jayanti** remembrance of the poet Tulsedas as one who brought spiritual uplift to the masses of people.

**Ugadi** (ugAdhi) New Years Day for Telugu people and those of Andhra Pradesh. It is said that Lord Brahm began the creation on this day. It is one of at least eight New Year observances in regions on India.

**Upanayana** Ceremony when the sacred thread is tied - to mark the start of learning with a guru.

**Upanishad** Upanisad To sit down near. A sacred text based on the teaching of a guru to a disciple. The Upanishads explain the teachings of the Vedas.

**Vaishnavism** Vaisnavism The religion of Hindus who are devotees of the god Vishnu.

**Vaishya** Vaisya The third of the four varnas of Hindu society, composed of merchants and farmers.

**Vanaprastha** The third stage of life, typified by retirement and asceticism.

**Vanaprasthi** Vanaprastha Forest dweller. One who is in the third stage of life.



**Varanasi** Banares, Benares, Kashi, Kasi City on the river Ganges, sacred to Shiva. It is one of the holiest pilgrimage sites and also an ancient centre of learning.

**Varna** Colour. The four principal divisions of Hindu society. It is important to note that the word 'caste' refers strictly to sub-divisions within each varna, and not to varnas themselves.

**Varnashrama** Varnashrama Dharma The system whereby society is divided into four varnas (divisions) and life into four ashramas (stages).

**Varsha Pratipada** The day of Creation, celebrated as New Year's Day by many Hindus.

**Vaisakhi** (Baisakhi) Hindu solar new year. For Sikhs the day remembers Guru Gobind Singh and the founding of the militant fraternity of Sikhs named Kahlsa. The day is observed by temple worship, feasting and dancing.

**Vasant Panchami** Celebration dedicated to Saraswati, goddess of learning.

**Veda** Knowledge. Specifically refers to the four Vedas, though any teaching which is consistent with the conclusions of these scriptures is also accepted as Vedic.

**Vedanta** The conclusion of the Vedas, the philosophy of contemporary Hinduism; explores the essential nature of man, God and the universe.

**Vijay Dashmi** Vijaya Dashami Another name for Dassehra.

**Vishnu** Visnu A Hindu god. With Brahma and Shiva forms the Trimurti.

**Vivah** The marriage ceremony; the couple takes on the responsibility of householders

**Vivekananda Jayanti** Celebration of the birthday of Swami Vivekenanda who was dedicated to bridging the gap between east and west.

**Vrat** Vratam Vow. Often including abstention from certain foods.

**Vrindavan** Brindavan Vrindavana Brindaban The sacred village connected with Krishna's pastimes as a youth.

**Yajur Veda** One of the four Vedas, dealing with the knowledge of karma.

**Yamuna** Jamuna, Jumna Tributary of the river Ganga (Ganges) considered by many Hindus to be the most sacred of all holy rivers.

**Yatra** Jatra Pilgrimage. Usually to important sacred places in India.

**Yoga** Communion; union of the soul with the Supreme, or a process which promotes that relationship. The English word 'yoke' is derived from yoga.

**Yuga Age** Or extended period of time, of which there are four.

**Yogi** One who has become united with the God

**Yuga** The Hindu idea of an age, a period of millions of years.

## GLOSSARY OF HUMANIST TERMS



**Agnostic** A person who does not believe in any god, but who insists that the existence of a god can neither be proved nor disproved.

**Apostate** A person who has abandoned one religion in favour of another, or has abandoned religion altogether.

**Atheist** A person who does not believe in any god or gods. The word is sometimes used to include agnostics, or may be restricted to those who definitely assert that gods do not exist.

**BCE** Before Common Era, a nonreligious replacement for BC (before Christ).

**CE** Common Era, a nonreligious replacement for AD (anno domini, or year of our Lord).

**Creationism** The belief that the universe and everything in it was created from nothing by a supernatural being (there are many versions of creationism, depending on the religious beliefs of their proponents). An extreme form is the fundamentalist belief in the Old Testament account of Earth's creation by God in six days, thus denying the slow evolution of living organisms from one form to another.

**Enlightenment** A broad trend in the period of Western history from the mid-17th through to the late 18th century and beyond. It was marked by an increasing refusal to accept authority that could not be justified by reasonable argument, whether in social, political or intellectual matters. Its strength derives from the application of reason, and the right of the individual to exercise it independently. The growth of modern science is inextricably linked to the enlightenment, and humanism has also benefited from its influence.

**Epicureanism** A humanist school of thought founded by Epicurus (ca. 341 – 271 BCE) and most famously exemplified by the Roman poet Lucretius (ca. 95 – 52 BCE). It was based on an atomistic, and therefore materialistic, understanding of the natural world and of humankind, excluding the possibility of life after death. In ethics, it attached great value to human happiness and the means of promoting it. Christianity has been largely hostile to Epicurean ideas, but they have been an inspiration to many in the humanist tradition of the last two centuries.

**Evolution** The natural process by which life changes and diversifies. Christian critics have often focused on natural selection, the mechanism of evolutionary change proposed by Charles Darwin in 1859 and still largely accepted by biologists. However the story of Earth's development and the succession of living things that have inhabited it over so many millions of years is no longer regarded as in any way debatable.

**Freethinker** Someone who rejects authority and dogma, especially that of religion.

**Humanism** A diverse movement that can be traced back at least as far as Socrates. It focuses on mankind in general, but especially on the recognition that human experience (however difficult it may be to interpret) is our only

means of understanding anything at all about the world and our situation in it. This view has inevitably brought humanism into conflict with religious authority almost throughout its history, and aligned humanism with the rise of modern science.

**Golden Rule** The ethical principle summed up in the injunction: "Do only as you would be done by". The Golden Rule is accepted by both Christians and humanists (it is clearly stated in St Matthew's gospel) but humanists have seen in it the foundation for an ethical structure that can stand independently of any divine or supernatural law-giving.

**Life-stance** The particular interpretation placed on life by an individual or a number of like-minded individuals, and the living of life accordingly. A framework of ideas that helps us understand the world and find meaning and value in life.

**Materialism** The theory that physical matter is the only reality and that everything can be explained in terms of physical phenomena.

**Moral** Boiled down to its essence, "moral" relates to the ability to distinguish between right and wrong. Of course this raises the question: "what is right and what is wrong?" For us to get along with one another in society we need agreed rules that clearly define right and wrong. These rules can be drawn up, and embedded in laws, without recourse to religion.

**Moral relativism** The idea (or fear) that one set of morals is no better than another. Humanists are often criticised for failing to offer any escape from moral relativism, but will counter this by reference to ideas such as the Golden Rule or the principles of Utilitarianism. They will also argue that the religious alternative (morality founded on divine commandment) fails to remove the difficulties of moral relativism.

**Rationalism** This word has various usages but, in the context of humanism and its rivals, it means a more or less strict devotion to reasoned argument as a way to the truth. By contrast, religious apologists have often made a virtue of their dependence on faith, revelation, or other sources of subjective certainty, which they believe are immune to sceptical challenge.

**Renaissance** The period in European history, beginning in the fourteenth century and continuing through to the early seventeenth century, which was marked by a renewal of interest in the diverse achievements of the ancient Greeks and Romans in art, science and philosophy. Through this knowledge, a variety of recognisably humanist views began to appear in the work of scholars like Erasmus, who did not see them as a threat to religious authority. In the following centuries, however, the plurality of ideas introduced in the Renaissance gave rise, among many other things, to an environment in which more radical challenges to received opinion could be contemplated.

**Scepticism** Any questioning of received opinion or common sense. This process is often uncomfortable, especially when the opinion questioned is well-entrenched, but the stimulus of scepticism turns out to be a fundamental device in the development of new ideas, and not merely in the elimination of old nonsense. We still have something to learn from the "Method of Doubt" by

which Rene Descartes sought to put *all* our beliefs on trial.

**Scientism** The belief that scientific knowledge is the only real knowledge, so that claims to knowledge from other sources should be progressively marginalised or disregarded. Such a belief depends on the idea that scientific evidence can readily be distinguished from the unscientific in all circumstances, and it ultimately threatens the very freedom of thought and debate on which science has always depended. The word is mainly used as an accusation or term of abuse.

**Secularism** The principle that no organised religion or sectarian interest should have a privileged position in the system of government, or in the content or administration of the law. In this sense humanists regard the advance of secularism as one of the foremost achievements of their cause. (More broadly, the word is also used for any tendency to focus on worldly or pragmatic matters rather than religious ones, or even for an outright opposition to religious practice.)

**Spirit** We all have "spiritual" experiences, things that can bring us to tears such as the wonders of nature, beautiful pieces of music or wonderfully written novels. Spiritual experiences are common to all human beings - they do not imply a religious experience nor do they imply an abstract entity ("spirit" or "soul") separate from the body.

**Spirituality** That which is experienced when an individual is moved to the heights or depths of his or her being in positive and meaningful ways.

**Supernatural** Related to powers or phenomena that are (claimed to be) above or beyond natural laws. That which is above and beyond the laws of nature; that which is magical or mystical. Belief in divine agency or powers not subject to natural law.

**Utilitarianism** An ethical system that has evolved mainly over the past two centuries. Its various versions agree that actions are to be judged by their overall consequence for human happiness (or some other measure of human well-being). It has been controversial mainly in its conflict with the traditional Christian view that the only true moral criterion is obedience to the divine will, regardless of consequences.

# ISLAM GLOSSARY



(PBUH) stands for 'Peace be upon him' is used by Muslims every time the Prophet Muhammad is mentioned. Similar respect is accorded to the other Prophets.

The Qur'an was revealed in Arabic, therefore Arabic is the language of Islam, Islamic worship, theology, ethics and jurisprudence. Islam is inextricably linked with the Arabic language despite the variety of languages spoken by the believers.

For British teachers and pupils who have not encountered Islamic terms, this transliteration is a simplified version of that used by contemporary scholars. An apostrophe is used to indicate a pause. The reader will note that the words salah and zakah end in 'h' when they appear alone. When part of a phrase, these words are written with a 't' at the end, eg Salat-ul-Zuhr, Zakat-ul-Fitr, as a guide to pronunciation.

**Abbas** Abbas b. Ali b. Abi Talib was the brother of Imam Hussein (A.S.). His mother was Umm al-Banin. Abbas was killed at Karbala.

**Abd** Servant. As in Abdullah, servant of Allah.

**Abu Bakr** The first Khalifah, successor to the leadership of the Muslim community after the death of the Prophet Muhammad. (PBUH)

**Adam** Adam (peace be upon him). The first man, and first Prophet of Allah.

**Adhan** Call to prayer. From the same root, Mu'adhin (one who makes the call to prayer).

**Aishah** One of the wives of the Prophet Muhammad, and daughter of Abu Bakr (Radhi-Allahu-anhum – may Allah be pleased with them).

**Akhirah** Everlasting life after death – the hereafter.

**Akhlaq** Conduct, character, attitudes and ethics.

**al-Amin** The Trustworthy. The name by which Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) was generally known, even before the revelation of Islam.

**al-Aqsa** Masjid-ul-Aqsa (The Farthest Mosque) in Jerusalem, located near the Dome of the Rock.

**al-Fatihah** The Opener. Surah 1 of the Qur'an. Recited at least 17 times daily during the five times of salah. Also known as 'The Essence' of the Qur'an.

**al-hamdu-li-Llah** All praise belongs to Allah. Frequently used as an expression of thanks to Allah.

**Al-Hijra** remembrance of the migration of Muhammad and followers to Medina in 622 C.E. and establishment of first Islamic state. No specific religious rituals are observed. Beginning of Islamic calendar year.

**al-Kafi** The title of the books of Hadith compiled by Muhammad ibn-Yaqub Koleini, a Shi'ah scholar.

**al-Khulafa-ur-Rashidun** The Rightly Guided Khalifahs. The first four successors to the leadership role the Prophet Muhammad. (PBUH) They were Abu Bakr, Umar, Uthman and Ali (Radhi-Allahu-anhum - may Allah be pleased with them).

**al-Madinah** Madinatun Nabi (The City of the Prophet). The name given to Yathrib after the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) migrated there in 622 CE and founded the first Islamic state.

**Ali** Cousin and son-in-law of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH); husband of Fatimah Zahrah; father of Hassan, Hussein, and Zainab; the fourth of 'al-Khulafa ur-Rashidun' according to Sunnis, and the first successor accepted by Shi'ah Islam (Radhi-Allahu-anhum - may Allah be pleased with them).

**Allah** The Islamic name for God in the Arabic language. Used in preference to the word God, this Arabic term is singular, has no plural, nor it is associated with masculine, feminine characteristics

**Allahu Akbar** Allah is most great.

**A'maal** A'maal is an act of worship

**Angels** Beings created by Allah from light. They have no free will and are completely obedient to Allah.

**Ansar** Supporters. The Muslims of al-Madinah, who welcomed, helped and supported the Muslims who migrated from Makkah.

**Arafat** A plain, a few kilometres from Makkah, where pilgrims gather to worship, pray and ask for forgiveness. This takes place on the ninth day of the Islamic month of Dhul-Hijjah, the day before Id-ul-Adha.

**Ashura** An optional one day fast recognizing the Creation, Noah's departure from the ark, and the saving of Moses from Pharaoh. Prophet Muhammad's Grandson, Hussain, was martyred on this date in 683/684 CE.

**Asr (Salat-ul-Asr)** Mid-afternoon salah which may be performed from late afternoon until a short while before sunset.

**As-Salamu-Alaykum** Peace be upon you. An Islamic greeting.

**Awra** The part of a person's body that must be covered before everybody but a spouse; for men this is from navel to knee, for women from upper chest to knee. It may also be used to refer to what must be concealed of a woman before non-related men

**Ayah** (sing.) A unit within a Surah of the Qur'an.

**Barakah** Blessings.

**Bid'a** Literally means "innovation"; it refers to adding an obligation to the religion that God and the Prophet Muhammad did not do. Some Muslims feel that adding anything at all to the religion, even if it's not an obligation, is a bid'a

**Bilal** The first Mu'adhin of Islam (see Adhan), a companion of Prophet Muhammad (PBUH), formerly an Abyssinian slave (Radhi-Allahu-anhu - may Allah be pleased with him).

**Bismillah** In the name of Allah.

**Bismillah-ir-Rahman-ir-Rahim** In the name of Allah - All Gracious, All Merciful. The preface to all Surahs of the Qur'an except the ninth one. It is usually said by Muslims before eating or beginning any action.

**Dalil** Evidence that is brought from Quran and Sunna to prove a point. For instance, to make a claim about the status of the face veil, one must present dalils

**Dar-ul-Islam** House or abode of Islam. Sometimes used to refer to lands ruled by Islamic Shari'ah.

**Da'wah** Call. Inviting people to Islam, whether by literal invitation and preaching, or by the example of good actions.

**Dawud** David (peace be upon him). A Prophet of Allah to whom the Zabur the Book of Psalms) was given.

**Day of Hajj** Islamic observance of the revelation to Mohammed on Mt Arafat.

**Deen** Also spelled "din". The Arabic word for "religion". Carries the sense of a debt that we owe God, and of a code for judging peoples' actions. Thus it means religion as a whole way of life not just as worship practices

**Dhikr** Remembrance. Remembrance of Allah in one's heart or by reciting His names or sections from the Qur'an.

**Dhimmi** A non-Muslim living freely under the protection of an Islamic state.

**Dhul-Hijjah** The month of the Hajj, last month of the Islamic year.

**Din** Way of life, religion together with its practices.

**Din-ul-Fitrah** A description of Islam as the natural way of life.

**Du'a** Varying forms of personal prayer and supplication.

**Eid ul-Adha** Feast of Sacrifice. The most important feast of Islam. It concludes the Hajj and is a three-day festival recalling Abraham's willingness to sacrifice his son in obedience to Allah.

**Eid ul Fitr** ('Id al-Fitr) Event marking the close of Ramadan. It is a festival of thanksgiving to Allah for enjoying the month of Ramadan. It involves wearing finest clothing, saying prayers, and fostering understanding with other religions.

**Fajr (Salat-ul-Fajr)** Dawn salah which may performed from dawn until just before sunrise.

**Fard** Obligatory duty according to divine law, eg, offering salah five times a day.

**Fatihah** See al-Fatihah.

**Fatimah** (al-Zahrah) Daughter of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH); wife of Ali; mother of Hassan, Hussein and Zainab (Radhi-Allahu-anhum – may Allah be pleased with them).

**Fatwa** The legal guidance of a pious, just, knowledgeable Muslim scholar and jurist, based on the Qur'an, Sunnah and Islamic Shari'ah.

**Fiqh** Understanding. Islamic jurisprudence

**Faqih** An expert in religious jurisprudence, specifically a Shia cleric whose mastery of the Quran, the traditions of the Prophet and the Twelve Imans, and the codices of Shia Islamic law permit him to render binding interpretations of religious laws and regulations.

**Fitrah** The charity due on the occasion of Eid al-Fitr, on the night after Ramadhan.

**Fitnah** Trial, temptation; tribulation, tumult.

**Fiqh** The science of jurisprudence or interpreting the Shari'a

**Furu al-din** In Shi'a Islam, the eleven Branches of Religion (Furu al-Din) are the ten practices that Shi'a Muslims must perform: 1 Shahadah (Declaration) 2 Salat (Prayer) 3 Sawm (Fast) 4 Hajj (Pilgrimage) 5 Zakat (Poor-rate) 6 Khums (One-fifth) 7 Jihad (Struggle) 8 Amr-Bil-Ma'ruf (Enjoining what is good) 9 Nahi-Anil-Munkar (Forbid what is evil) 10 Tawalla (To love the Ahl al-Bayt and their followers ) 11 Tabarra (To disassociate from the enemies of the Ahl al-Bayt)

**Ghadeer** A place near Mecca, and the great holiday named after the event that occurred at that place.

**Ghusl** Greater ablution. Formal washing of the whole body prior to worship (see Wudu).

**Hadith** Saying; report; account. The sayings of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH), as recounted by his household, progeny and companions. These are a major source of Islamic law. Some Hadith are referred to as Hadith Qudsi (sacred Haddith) having been divinely communicated to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

**Hadith Qudsi** A special kind of hadith in which the Prophet Muhammad reports on what God said to him other than the Quran; these are considered to be paraphrases while the Quran is God's literal word

**Hafiz** Someone who knows the whole Qur'an by heart.

**Hagar**. Wife of the Prophet Ibrahim, and mother of the Prophet Isma'il (peace be upon them).

**Hajarul Aswad** Hajarul Aswad is the Black Stone.

**Hajj** Annual pilgrimage to Makkah on 7-12th days of month of Dhu al-Hajja, which each Muslim must undertake at least once in a lifetime if he or she has the health and wealth. A Muslim male who has completed Hajj is called Hajji. and a female Hajjah. Concludes with Eid ul Adha when those not travelling to Mecca take part.

**Halal** Lawful; something that is halal may be required, recommended, neutral, or even detestable. It is just that it is not forbidden

**Hanafi** One of the four madhhabs . Generally considered the most liberal

**Hanbali** One of the four madhhabs. Generally considered the most conservative

**Haram** Forbidden; performance will be punished and neglect will be rewarded (said of an action)

**Hawza** The word Hawza refers to a traditional Islamic school of higher learning.

**Hejab** Modesty in attire; defined by the Shia clergy to mean that women and girls must cover all their hair and flesh except for hands and face when in public. It is not necessary to wear a chador (a cloth serving as a cloak) to conform with hejab, although the two terms often are equated.

**Hezbollahi** Literally, a follower of the party of God. Hezbollahis originally were followers of a particular religious figure who eventually came to constitute an unofficial political party. They were not an irregular or paramilitary group.

**Hijra** The calendar system used in Islam

**Halal** Any action or thing which permitted or lawful

**Halal meat** Meat slaughtered in a special way according to the laws of Islam.

**Haram** Anything unlawful or not permitted.

**Haram Sharif** The grand mosque in Makkah, which encompasses the Ka'bah, the hills of Safa and Marwah and the well of Zamzam.

**Hijab** Veil. Often used to describe the head scarf or modest dress worn by women, who are required to cover everything except face and hands in the sight of anyone other than immediate family.



**Hijrah** Departure; exit; emigration. The emigration of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) from Makkah to Madinah in 622 CE. The Islamic calendar commences from this event.

**Hira** The name of a place near Makkah, where the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) went for solitude and worship. It was there that he received the first revelation of the Qur'an.

**Ibadah** All acts of worship. Any permissible action performed with the intention to obey Allah .

**Iblis** The Jinn who defied Allah by refusing to bow to Adam (peace be upon him), and later became the tempter of all human beings (see Shaytan).

**Ibrahim** Abraham (peace be upon him). A Prophet of Allah to whom the 'scrolls' were given.

**Ibrahim (pbuh)** For Muslims, a prophet of Allah. Jews and Christians call him Abraham.

**Id** Recurring happiness. A religious holiday; a feast for thanking Allah and celebrating a happy occasion.

**Id Mubarak** Id blessings! Greeting exchanged during Islamic celebrations.

**Id-ul-Adha** Celebration of the sacrifice, commemorating the Prophet Ibrahim's willingness to sacrifice his son Isma'il for Allah (peace be upon them). Also known as Id -ul-Kabir - the Greater Id - and Qurban Bayram (Turkish) feast of sacrifice. Meat is given to the poor.

**Id-ul-Fitr** Celebration of breaking the fast on the day after Ramadan ends, which is also the first day of Shawal, the tenth Islamic month. Also known as al-Fitr (Eid al Fitr) It involves wearing finest clothing, saying prayers, and fostering understanding with other religions.

**Id-ul-Saghir** The Lesser Id - and Sheker Bayram (Turkish) - sugar feast.

**Iftar** Iftar is the breaking of the fast

**Ihram** The state or condition entered into to perform either Hajj or Umrah. During this period, many normally permitted actions are placed out of bounds to Muslims. Also, the name of the two plain white unsewn cloths worn by male pilgrims to indicate the brotherhood, equality and purity of the pilgrim. For women, the dress of Ihram consists of their normal modest clothing.

**Ijma** General consensus of scholars, expressed or tacit, on matters of law and practice.

**Iman** Faith

**Imam** Leader. A person who leads the communal prayer, or a founder of an Islamic school of jurisprudence. In Shi'ah Islam, Imam is also the title of Ali (Radhi-Allahu-anhu - may Allah be pleased with him) and his successors.

**Imam** Among Twelver Shias the principal meaning is a designation of one of the twelve legitimate successors of the Prophet Muhammad. Also used by both Shias (q.v.) and Sunnis (q.v.) to designate a congregational prayer leader or cleric.

**Imamah** Office and function of an Imam. Religious authority in Shi'ah Islam; successor to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) as leader of the Muslim community.

**Iman** Faith.

**Injil** Gospel. A book given to Prophet Isa (peace be upon him).

**Inshallah** God willing; if God wills (said when discussing the future)

**Iqamah** Call to stand up for salah.

**Isa** Jesus. A Prophet of Allah, born of the virgin Mary (peace be upon them).

**Isha (Salat-ul-Isha)** Evening salah which may be performed from just over an hour after sunset, until midnight.

**Islam** Peace attained through willing obedience to Allah's divine guidance.

**Islamic canon law.** Among Shias (q.v.) the shariat includes the Quran and the authenticated sayings of the Prophet (hadith) and the Twelve Imams (q.v.).

**Islamic clergy** The religious leaders of Shia (q.v.) Islam, which group includes numerous mullahs (q.v.), who in general possess only rudimentary religious education; mujtahids, a relatively small body of religious scholars, the majority of whom are accorded the title of hojjatoleslam; and a small number of the most learned and pious of the mujtahids, who are given the title of ayatollah.

**Isma'il** Ishmael. A Prophet of Allah. Son of the Prophet Ibrahim and Hajar (peace be upon them).

**Isnad** Chain of transmission of each Hadith.

**Istikhara** A type of salat; it is offered when a Muslim faces a difficult decision, seeking God's aid

**Janaabah** The major state of impurity, after having had sexual relations or sexual discharge through whatever means, i.e. a wet dream. In this state, ghusl is obligatory, if unable to do so, then tayammum will temporarily suffice.

**Jannah** Paradise; the abode of the righteous in the Hereafter. The Arabic word "Jannah" means "garden"

**Jibril** Gabriel. The angel who delivered Allah's messages to His Prophets.

**Jihad** Personal individual struggle against evil in the way of Allah. It can also be collective defence of the Muslim community.

**Jilbab** A long coat or cloak; more generally, any type of outergarment that covers from the shoulders to the ankles. Commanded in Quran Surah al-Ahzab ayah 59

**Jinn** Being created by Allah from fire.

**Jumu'ah (Salat-ul-Jumu'ah)** The weekly communal salah, and attendance at the khutbah performed shortly after midday on Fridays.

**Jummatul Wida** Last Friday of Ramadan observance.

**Ka'bah** A cube-shaped structure in the centre of the grand mosque in Makkah. The first house built for the worship of the One True God.

**Kafa** is the shroud for the dead

**Karbala** Kerbala: a city of central Iraq south of Baghdad; a holy city for Shiite Muslims because it is the site of the tomb of Mohammed's grandson who was killed there in 680

**Khadijah** First wife of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). Mother of Fatimah Zahrah (Radhi-Allahu-anhum - may Allah be pleased with them).

**Khalifah** Successor; inheritor; custodian; vice-regent (see al-Khulafa-ur-Rashidun).

**Khilafah** The institution of the Khalifah.

**Khwms** Contribution (additional to zakah) of one fifth of surplus annual income paid by Shi'ah Muslims. Sunni Muslims only apply Khums to booty.

**Khutbah** Speech. Talk delivered on special occasions such as the Jum'uah and Id prayers.

**Laylat al Bara'ah (Shab-Barat)** Night of Forgiveness. A night of prayer to Allah for forgiveness of the dead. Preparation for Ramadan through intense prayer.

**Laylat al-Miraj & Israa'** Observance of Mohammed's night journey from Mecca to Jerusalem and his ascension to heaven.

**Laylat-ul-Qadr** The Night of Power, when the first revelation of the Qur'an was made to Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). It is believed to be one of the last ten nights of Ramadan. A night spent in worship to mark the first revelation of the Qur'an Observed during the last ten days of Ramadan. Prayers to Allah for a good destiny.

**Mabruk** An Arabic term meaning "Congratulations!" or "May you be blessed"

**Madhhab** A term referring to a legal school in Islam. Each has a slightly different way of engaging in fiqh

**Madinah** See al-Madinah.

**Madraseh** A religious college or seminary that trains men in Islamic jurisprudence.

**Makruh** Something that Islam strongly discourages, but does not forbid.

**Maghrib (Salat-ul-Maghrib)** Sunset salah which is performed after sunset until daylight ends.

**Mahdi, al-Muntazar** The (rightly) guided one who is awaited and will appear towards the end of time to lead the Ummah and restore justice on Earth. The one who is promised in the Judaic, Christian and Islamic traditions.

**Mahram** Someone with whom there can never be marriage because of consanguinity or affinity. For example, a father is a mahram relative for a woman

**Mahriyeh** An agreed upon amount of money and/or property that a groom provides his bride as specified in the marriage contract.

**Makkah** City where the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) was born, and where the Ka'bah is located.

**Maktab** Primary school operated by Shia clergy.

**Maliki** One of the four madhhabs . Generally considered moderately liberal

**Marja** A marja, or marja-e-taqleed literally "source of imitation" or "source of tradition", is the second highest authority on religion and law in Shi'a Islam after the prophet(pbuh) and (Shi'a) Imams.

**Maryam** Mary. The virgin mother of the Prophet Isa (peace be upon them).

**Mashallah** What God has willed (said whenever something good or bad happens)

**Masjid** Place of prostration. Mosque.

**Mawlid el-Nabi** Commemoration of the birthday of Prophet Muhammad, founder of Islam, in about 570 C.E. Not universally observed. The prophet's teachings are read and religious meetings are held.

**Mihrab** Niche or alcove in a mosque wall, indicating the Qiblah - the direction of Makkah, towards which all Muslims face to perform salah.

**Mina** Place near Makkah, where pilgrims stay on the 10th, 11th and 12th of Dhul-Hijjah and perform some of the activities of the Hajj.

**Minaret** A tall slender tower on an Islamic mosque.

**Minbar** Rostrum; platform; dais. The stand from which the Imam delivers the khutbah or speech in the mosque or praying ground.

**Miqat** Place appointed, at which pilgrims enter into the state of ihram.  
**Mi'raj** The ascent through the heavens of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).  
**Momin** The one who believes in Islam  
**Mosque** Building or space set aside for Muslim public prayer.  
**Muezzin** The Muslim who calls others to prayer.  
**Mubah** Neutral; performance will not be rewarded and neglect will not be punished (said of an action)  
**Mu'adhin** Caller to prayer (see Adhan). Known in English as 'muezzin'.  
**Muqallid** A follower of a qualified specialist on religious matters.  
**Muhammad** Praised. Name of the final Prophet. (PBUH)  
**Muharram** First month in the Islamic calendar, which is calculated from the time the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) migrated to Yathrib (Madinah).  
**Mullah** Generic term for a member of the Islamic clergy; usually refers to a preacher or other low-ranking cleric who has not earned the right to interpret religious laws.  
**Mumin** Faithful. A believer, a practising Muslim who wholeheartedly yields to Allah's guiding wisdom and is thus in harmony with His will and at peace with himself and fellow creatures.  
**Musa** Moses (peace be upon him). A Prophet of Allah to whom the Tawrah (Torah) was given.  
**Muslim** One who claims to have accepted Islam by professing the Shahadah.  
**Mustahabb** Recommended; performance will be rewarded but neglect is not punished (said of an action)  
**Muta** A temporary marriage, the duration of which is stipulated by contract. Only Twelver Shias (q.v.) recognize muta marriages.  
**Muzdalifah** Place where pilgrims on Hajj stop for a time during the night of the day they spend at Arafat.

**Naar** The fire of Hell

**Nabi** Prophet of Allah.

**Najess** Impure

**Niqab** The face veil; styles of dress that involve veiling the face. A woman who wears niqab is a niqabi

**New Year** The Islamic cycle of months begins. Formulas determine holy days based on lunar events.

**Non-mehram** One with whom marriage is permitted

**Nikah** A pronouncement of marriage according to Shari'ah

**Niyyah** Intention. A legally required statement of intent, made prior to all acts of devotion such as salah, Hajj or sawm.

**Pak** Is something that is clean, not najis

**Qadar** Allah's complete and final control over the fulfilment of events or destiny.

**Qiblah** Direction which Muslims face when performing salah - towards the Ka'bah (see Mihrab).

**Qiyamah, Day of** The Day of Resurrection; Judgement Day. The Arabic word "qiyamah" carries a sense of it being the day on which everybody is called to stand (before God)

**Qur'an** That which is read or recited. The Divine Book revealed to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). Allah's final revelation to humankind.

**Rajab** The seventh month of the Islamic calendar

**Rak'ah** A unit of salah, made up of recitation, standing, bowing and two prostrations.

**Ramadan** The ninth month of the Islamic calendar, devoted to the commemoration of Muhammad's reception of the divine revelation recorded in the Qur'an, during which fasting is required from just before dawn until sunset, as ordered by Allah in the Qur'an. The event begins when authorities in Saudi Arabia sight the new moon of the 9th month. It is the holiest period of the Islamic Year.

**Rasul** Messenger of Allah.

**Revert** A person who returns to a religion they previously had; Muslim custom is to apply this term to converts to Islam as well, on the grounds that Islam is the religion that every person was born into, but their parents made them another religion

**Riba** The practice of charging interest on loans; sometimes translated as "usury". Riba is forbidden under Islamic law, which makes the modern finance system challenging for Muslims

**Ruku'** the act of bowing in the Salat

**(S.A.W)** An abbreviation for "salli Allahu alayhi wa sallam"; used after the name of the Prophet Muhammad, it means "may the blessings of God and peace be upon him"

**Sabr** An Arabic word meaning "perseverance" or "patience". The quality of continuing to trust in God even when everything seems to be going wrong. Sabr is one of the qualities that can lead to Paradise. Quran 33:35 mentions "the men who persevere and the women who persevere" as among those who will receive a great reward from God

**Sadaqah** Voluntary payment or good action for charitable purposes.

**Safa & Marwah** Two hills in Makkah, near the Ka'bah, now included within the grand mosque (see Sa'y).

**Sahaba** The Companions of the Prophet Muhammad; the singular is "sahabi" and the feminine plural is "sahabiyat"

**Saheeh** "Correct"; an authentic narration.

**Sahih Muslim** The title of the books of Hadith compiled by Abul Husayn Muslim ibn al-Hajjaj, a Sunni scholar. The collection is described as Sahih (authentic).

**Sahih al-Bukhari** The title of the books of Hadith compiled by Muhammad ibn Isma'il al-Bukhari, a Sunni scholar. The collection is described as Sahih (authentic).

**Sajdah** The act of prostration in the Salat, when seven portions of the body touch the earth: the forehead on pure ground, two palms, two knees, and the two big toes. The two Sajdahs together are called sajdain.

**Salaf** A general term for the early generations of Muslims

**Salah** Prescribed communication with, and worship of, Allah, performed under specific conditions, in the manner taught by the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH), and recited in the Arabic language. The five daily times of salah are fixed by Allah.

**Salam** A salutation. It is also the last recitation at the end of Salat.

**Salat** The fixed-time ritual prayer of Islam and one of the five pillars. It is offered five times a day: at dawn, mid-day, mid-afternoon, sunset, and nightfall

**Salawat** Are invocation of blessings, specifically the recitation of Allahumma Sali 'Ala Muhammadin Wa Aali Muhammad, meaning O Allah, bless Muhammad and the family of Muhammad.

**Sawm** Fasting from just before dawn until sunset. Abstinence is required from all food and drink (including water) as well as smoking and sex.

**Saudi Arabia** A Muslim country in the Middle East, famous for its oil.

**Sa'y** Walking and hastening between Safa and Marwah, as part of the Hajj, in remembrance of Hajar's search for water for her son Isma'il (peace be upon them).

**Sayyid** A descendant of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.)

**Shafi'i** One of the four madhhabs. Generally considered relatively conservative

**Shahadah** Declaration of faith, which consists of the statement, 'There is no god except Allah, Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah'.

**Shari'ah** Islamic law based upon the Qur'an and Sunnah.

**Shawwal** The 10th month of the Islamic calendar

**Shaytan** Rebellious; proud. The devil (see Iblis).

**Shi'ah** Followers. Muslims who believe in the Imamah, successorship of Ali (Radhi- Allahu-anhu - may Allah be pleased with him) after the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) and 11 of his most pious, knowledgeable descendants.

**Shirk** Association. Regarding anything as being equal or partner to Allah. Shirk is forbidden in Islam.

**Shura** Consultation of the people in the management of religious and worldly affairs. A duty prescribed in the Qur'an to leaders at all levels, from family to government.

**Sirah** Biographical writings about the conduct and example of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

**Subhah** String of beads used to count recitations in worship.

**Sunnah** Model practices, customs and traditions of the Prophet Muhammad. This is found in both Hadith and Sirah.

**Sunni** Muslims who believe in the successorship of Abu Bakr, Umar, Uthman and Ali (Radhi-Allahu-anhum - may Allah be pleased with them) after the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

**Surah** Division of the Qur'an (114 in all).

**Takbir** Saying 'Allahu Akbar!' Recited during salah, Id and other celebratory occasions.

**Tawaf** Walking seven times around the Ka'bah in worship of Allah. Also, a part of Hajj and Umrah.

**Tawhid** Belief in the Oneness of Allah - absolute monotheism as practised in Islam.

**Tawrah** The Torah. The book given to the Prophet Musa (Moses) (peace be upon him).

**Tayammum** Spiritual cleansing which is sometimes a substitute for wudhu and ghusl.

**Ulama** Scholars of Islamic law and jurisprudence (sing. Alim).

**Umar ibn ul-Khattab** Second Khalifah of Islam.

**Ummah** Community. World-wide community of Muslims; the nation of Islam.

**Umrah** Lesser pilgrimage which can be performed at any time of the year.

**Uthman** The third Khalifah of Islam.

**Velayat-e faqih** The guardianship of the religious jurist. Concept elaborated by Ayatollah Khomeini to justify political rule by the clergy.

**Waqf al Arafa** Observance day during Hajj when pilgrims pray for forgiveness and mercy.

**Wudu** Ablution before salah.

**Yathrib** Town to which the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) migrated from Makkah (see al-Madinah).

**Zabur** The Book of Psalms given to Prophet Dawud (David) (peace be upon him).

**Zakah** Purification of wealth by payment of annual welfare due. An obligatory act of worship.

**Zakat-ul-Fitr** Welfare payment at the end of Ramadan.

**Zamzam** Name of the well adjacent to the Ka'bah in Makkah. The water first sprang in answer to Hajar's search and prayers (see Hajar and Sa'y).

**Zuhr** (Salat-ul-Zuhr) Salah which can be performed after midday until afternoon.

## A GLOSSARY OF JAIN TERMS



**Abadhakala** The duration of time from the bondage of the karma to the rise of the karmic effect

**Abhigrahika** The state of mind, which is dogmatic, and which affirms that a particular view is right and all other are wrong. It is the form of mithyatva or dogmatic assertion.

**Abhigrahita** The mithyatva or perversity of belief, which is acquired due to the teaching of others.

**Acharya/ji** A Sadhu who is learned, is master of scriptures, and is head of a Sangh.

**Adattadana** See Vratas.

**Addhasamaya** Time or the indivisible part of time.

**Adinatha Risabha** The first tirthankara of the Jain order, who was not only the first monarch on earth, but was first in all respects, because of which he is called Adinatha, or Lord of Genesis. He taught men arts and crafts and gave them the first Canons and the Brahmi script.

**Adharma** The unrighteous attitude which is responsible for the downfall of the soul in the spiritual path.

**Adharmadravya** Principle of rest.

**Adhi** Two and a half.

**Adhigama** Sense experience of the objects.

**Adholoka** The lower world.

**Adhruvabandha** The bondage of the karmic matter of a soul in the cases where there is the possibility of the non-bondage of the karmic matter and the consequent freedom from bondage.

**Adhruvabandhini** The psychic attitude by which there is the possibility of bondage or there may not be any bondage of any karma.

**Adhruvodaya** The rise of the satavedaniya karma etc., on subsequent occasions due to the non-destructions of the previous dispositions.

**Agama** Testimony of an authority that is pure and perfect.

**Aghati** The four types of Karmas, whose effect on soul are much milder than the other four. These effects end at the end of a life.

**Agurulaghu** The absence of the two characteristics of heaviness and lightness.

**Agurulaghuguna** The characteristic, which expresses neither the lightness nor the heaviness as in the case of the characteristics of the soul. It is infinite in character.

**Ahimsa** Non-injury, non-slaughter, by words, mind and deeds. This is the first principal vow of the Jain religion. In its broad connotation, it covers the remaining four vows of non-lie, non- sex, non-theft, and non-possession.

**Airavat** Name of a Kshetra.

**Ajiva** Non-living substance.

**Ajnana** Ignorance due to the perversity of attitude which arises due to the rise of jnanavaraniya karma.

**Akamanirjara** The removal of karmic particles by actions like fasting, celibacy, sleeping on the floor...etc, not voluntarily but out of compulsion as in the case of a man who is imprisoned and who has to undergo these hardships.



**Akarmabhumi** The world where there is no activity like agriculture, writing...etc.

**Akasa** Space. It accommodates the substances like jiva, dharma, adharma, pudgala and kala.

**Aloka** Space beyond the world. It is the limitless space.

**Anabhigrahita mithyatva** The perversity of attitude, which arises due to wrong teaching and due to the clinging of wrong teaching or from the belief that all other views, and theories are equally true.

**Anakaropayoga** Indeterminate upayoga i.e. Darsanopayoga.

**Ananta** Endless or infinite. For instance, kevalajnana is ananta.

**Anantanubandhi** A process by which samyagdarsana is withheld and if the right knowledge has already arisen it vanishes. It is an endless series of the expressions of passions or kasaya or emotional states.

**Anantavirya** Infinite energy of the soul.

**Anapavartaniya** The exhaustion of ayukarma as per schedule without any decrease in the duration or intensity. The ayukarma of this life is determined due to the previous karma needs to be completely exhausted.

**Anekanta** The many sided approach to reality.

**Anikacita** It is contrary to nikacita in which the processes of utkarsana (increase), apakarsana (decrease) and sankramana (transformation) of karmic matter are possible.

**Antaraya Karma** Karma which determines and obstructs the inherent energy of the soul. For instance, it obstructs the activity of giving alms etc.

**Antary** A Ghati Karma that obstructs the vigour of soul.

**Antyasthula** Ultimate vastness. This refers to the entire cosmos and the matter of the cosmos.

**Antyasukma** The ultimate subtlety which is to be found in the atom.

**Anu** An atom.

**Anuvrat** A vow that is not as strict as a Mahavrat. Anuvrats are for people living family lives. The five Vrats are: Ahimsa, Truth, Non-stealing, Self-control, and Limited-Accumulation.

**Apakarsana** Decrease in the intensity of the karmic effect.

**Apavartana** The transformation or the decrease in the states and intensities of the effects of bondage.

**Apavartana sankramana** The process of the reduction of the experience and the effects of the karmic intensities.

**Apavartya** It is the premature realisation of the ayukarma as in the case of death by accident or poisoning.

**Apratipati** A form of avadhijnana (clairvoyance) which lasts up to the kevalajnana (omniscience).

**Apratyakhyana kasaya** The kasayas or passions which inhibit the expression of right conduct of a householder i.e., sravaka.

**Ara** One of the six divisions of time. Runs from thousands to billions of years. The 5th Ara already started some 2,500 years ago.

**Ardhamagadhi bhasa** the ancient language spoken half the part of the Magadhadesa and it included the 18 dialects.

**Arihant** Conqueror of internal enemies, such as anger, pride, deceit, greed, jealousy, hatred, intrigue, passions, etc.

**Arta dhyana** The lowest form of meditation as identified by the Jains. Its object is two-fold: a desire to get rid of an undesired thing, and a desire to get

back a dear and coveted thing. This characterizes the thinking of all human beings.

**Arthanaya** That point of view or naya, which is different from vyanjana and is distinguished from the other characteristics like gender, number, time and agency.

**Arthavagraha** Determinate confessional stage in which there is the awareness of the sensation.

**Arupi** Formless matter. It has no characteristics of sabda (sound), rupa (form), rasa (taste), gandha (smell) and sparsa (touch).

**Asana-pana-khadim-swadim** Four food items as follows: Bread, rice that constitute the main meal; all drinks; fruits; betel, chewing spices taken after meal, jaggery, honey, etc.

**Asrava** See Navatattva.

**Astikaya** The five substances, they are: jiva, pudgala, dharma, adharma and akasa, because the space points of this substance signify the collective nature or they are in collection.

**Asurakumaras** A species of peripatetic celestial beings. See Devas.

**Atithi** One who may come any time, unexpectedly, without invitation, and still welcome with love and respect.

**Atma** Soul

**Atyantabhava** Absolute negation; for example, the sky flower or the son of barren women or horns of a rabbit.

**Audarikasarira** The gross body because 'udara' means gross.

**Audayika bhava** The state of mind with reference to the effective state origination from the rise of the karmic matter.

**Avadhi-jnana** See Jnana.

**Avagraha** A sensational stage of experience.

**Avasthita** (dravya) The substance like pudgala which has a determinate space points, dharma, adharma, lokakasa and jiva have infinite number of space points while pudgala and alokakasa have endless space points. These substances never go beyond their space points hence they are called Avasthita.

**Avaya** (apaya) The stage of perceptual experience (indriya pratyaksa). It is perceptual judgement.

**Avigrahagati** Direct movement of soul. Vighraha means obstruction or uneven direction. The jiva in its movement gets uneven direction due to certain obstructions and that is called vighrahagati. Contrary to this is direct movement, it is called rjugati. So the direct movement of jiva for one samaya is also mentioned as avigrahagati.

**Avipaka nirjara** The karmic matter, which arises prematurely due to certain spiritual efforts, and the karma is destroyed, just as a mango fruit is prematurely ripened by artificial methods.

**Ayushya** An Aghati Karma that determines how long one would live.

**Bhante** A form of address inviting the attention of the Acharya; Sanskrit bhadanta, bhavanta, bhayanta, i.e., one who helps end transmigration.

**Beindriya** Lives with two senses, namely touch and taste.

**Bharanda bird** A giant-sized bird with two mouths and one belly. Traders used to go to the Valley of Diamonds with their help. These birds have been praised in the Jain literature for their extreme steadfastness.

**Bharat** Name of a Kshetra. We live in this Bharat Kshetra, located in southern Jambu Dweep.

**Brahma** A god of Hindu mythology linked with creation.

**Chadmastha** Chadma means jnanavarana and darsanavarana karma. The jiva who lives in the state of these two karmas is Chadmastha.

**Charitra** Conduct, or behaviour, without any hatred or attachment. A pure soul is completely free from Attachments and hatreds.

**Chaitra** Name of a month in the Indian calendar, extending roughly from the middle of March to the middle of April.

**Chaturdasi** Fourteenth day in each fortnight which is particularly important for the practice of austerities like fasting, giving up food at night and fortnightly confession.

**Chauvisantho** A prayer to the twenty four Tirthankars of this Kaal in Bharat Kshetra. We list, bow, and praise them for their great virtues.

**Choindriya** Lives with four senses, namely touch, taste, smell, and sight.

**Darsana** The belief or faith.

**Darshan** Perception. A pure soul has infinite perception. Darshanavaraniya A Ghati Karma that obscures the capacity of soul of perceiving everything.

**Dasa Laxana** Observance with focus on the holy texts describing the ten characteristics to which devotees aspire.

**Deep Diwali** Commemoration of the liberation of Mahavira from the endless cycle of birth and rebirth.

**Dev** A soul in heaven, or at a high spiritual level.

**Deva** A celestial being. There are four broad categories of celestial beings as follows: Bhavanapatis (residential); Vyantaras (Peripatetic); Jyotiskas (stellar bodies); and Vaimanikas (heavenly bodies).

- The following are the Bhavanapati devas: Asurakumaras, Nagakumaras, Vidyutkumaras, Suparnakumaras, Agnikumaras, Vatakumaras, Stnitkumaras, Udadhikumaras, Dwipkumaras, and Dikkumaras. Vyantaras (Peripatetic).
- The following are the Vyantara devas: Kinnaras, Kimpurisas, Moharagas, Gandharvas, Yaksas, Raksasas, Bhutas, and Pisachas.
- Jyotiska devas include the sun, the moon, the stars, the planets, etc. Bhavanapatis and Vyantaras live just below the earth.
- Vaimanikas are of two types: Kalpotpannas and Kalpatitas. The former live in heavens just above the Jyotiska devas, and the latter live farther beyond.

**Deva Dharanendra** Protecting deity of Tirthankar Parsva, himself the lord of the nagas (snakes).

**Devlok** Heaven.

**Dhairya** Patience. A pure soul has infinite patience.

**Dharana** (Retention) condition of recollection, an element in avagraha.

**Dharma** Law, religion. Technically, the Jains have used the term to signify motion, as adharma signifies rest.

**Dharma-dhyana** Meditating on spiritual objects, like the words of the tirthankaras, images of the tirthankaras, etc. The Jains have conceived four types of meditation, of which two are common to all worldly beings and two are followed by those who are on the spiritual path. They are: Arta-dhyana,

which is meditating on earthly objects for one's own happiness; Raudra-dhyana, which is meditating on doing harm to another or others for one's own happiness; Dharma-dhyana as above; and Sukla-dhyana, which is meditating on one's own self.

**Dharma dravya** Dharma as substance, it is the principle of motion.

**Dhatakikhand** Name of a Dweep.

**Dhrauvya** The duration or permanence of the aspect of the substance.

**Dik** Direction in space.

**Dig-vrati** See Dikparimana under Vratas.

**Dravya** (Substance) The shelter of attributes and modes. It has origination, destruction and permanence. It is eternal.

**Dravya niksepa** The understanding of the nature of the object from the point of view of substance based on the dialectical considerations.

**Dravyastika naya** The point of view of substance.

**Drstivada** The twelfth Holy Scripture (Anga) of Jains. In it the elements with their modes etc., were vividly described.

**Dukkadam** Bad deed or fault/lapse.

**Dvesa** Hatred, krodha-anger, mana-ego, arati-dislike and fear are expressions of dvesa.

**Dweep** A large isolated area. There are two and a half Dweeps, each with three Kshetras in them.

**Ekatva pratyabhijnana** Recognition in which perceptual judgement and the recollection are synthesized. In this form of experience we recognize an object as the one, which has been experienced or seen in the past, and say it is the 'same'.

**Evambhutanaya** The point of view, which refers to the sabdanaya, and it refers to the functional use of the term.

**Ganadhara Kesi** Fourth Acharya in the line of Parsva, a contemporary of Mahavira. He had a long discussion with Ganadhara Gautama of the order of Mahavira, which resolved the differences between the two sects of the nirgranthas, who were united thereafter.

**Ganadhar/ji** The first (principal) disciples of Tirthankars. Mahavir had eleven.

**Gandharva** Marriage One of the eight forms of marriage in vogue in ancient India, in which, without the consent of their parents and the elders, a boy and a girl got married by a simple exchange of garlands.

**Gandhasthi** The best elephant.

**Ghati** The four types of Karmas, whose effects are much stronger than the other four. These effects last for many lives.

**Gnan** Knowledge. A pure soul has infinite knowledge. Gnanavaraniya A Ghati Karma that obscures the capacity of soul of knowing everything.

**Gotra** An Aghati Karma that determines the status.

**Grevayak** High heaven.

**Gunavrat** Three vows that enhance the five Anuvrats.

**Gupti** Self-control over Mind, Speech, and Body.

**Guru/ji/dev** A religious teacher.

**Iha** A stage of sensation. It may be called associative integration by which are stimulations are received and organized.

**Indriya** Sense organs through which sense-experience is possible, due to the contact of the sense organs and the manas.

**Iryapathakriya** Irya means yoga (activity). The karmic flow, which is accrued due to one type of activity, is called Iryapathakarma and activity is called Iryapathakriya.

**Isvara** The perfect soul which has attained kevalajnana and which has reached the highest stage of perfection is called Isvara.

**Jain** A follower of Jainism. ("Jai" means Victory.)

**Jainism** The religion preached by Mahavir and other Tirthankars, with high emphasis on conquering the inner enemies.

**Jambu** Name of a Dweep

**Jashan-e Sadeh** (Sadeh) Mid winter celebration in which a bonfire is often used to express defiance of the cold of winter.

**Jina** One who has conquered the feelings of attachment and aversion and all the four types of passions. He is free from 18 types of defects.

**Jina/Jineshwar** Another word for Tirthankars, based on "Jai."

**Jiv** Soul.

**Jnan** Knowledge. The Jains have conceived five kinds of knowledge as follows:

Mati or ordinary cognition by the sense organs and the mind;

Sruta or knowledge derived with the help of signs, symbols, or words (expressions);

Avadhi or direct knowledge of corporeal things without the help of the sense organs and the mind, but within some limit of space and time;

Manahparyaya or direct knowledge of the thought of others without the help of the sense organs and the mind, but within some limit of space and time;

Kevala or knowledge which completely reveals, without any limitation of space and time, the truth about all things in the universe, corporeal as well as non-corporeal, with all their attributes and modifications, past, present, and future.

**Jojan** A unit of measuring very long distances

**Jyotish Chakra** Area of space in which zodiac planets, stars, etc. are located.

**Kaal** Time. Runs into more than billions of years per cycle.

**Kalpas** Heavens. According to the Jains, there are 12 or 16 kalpas as follows:

Saudharma & Aisana (paired)

Sanatkumara & Mahendra (paired)

Above them, in the centre, one above another, are:

Brahmaloka

Lantaka

Mahasukra

Sahasrara

And then, above them, in pairs again:

Anata & Pranata

Arana & Achyuta

The Digambaras add Brahmottara before Lantaka, Kapistha and Sukra before Mahasukra, and Satara before Sahasrara, making a total of 16.

**Kalpa tree** It was a variety of flora, now wholly extinct, which supplied everyday requirements of human beings, subsistence in particular, before they devised various arts and crafts.

**Kapalika** A sect of heretical monks in the Sakti cult prevalent all over India at one time. the kapalika mode of propitiation is not very dominant now, though there are many Saktas in India to this day. They usually believe in animal slaughter.

**Karma** A substantive force, matter in very subtle form. These matter-particles, called pudgalas, fill all cosmic space. The soul, by its communication with the outer world, becomes literally penetrated by these matter-particles. These in turn become karma and build up a special body called karman sarira, which does not leave the soul until its final liberation. Karma works in such a way that every action leaves a mark of its own, which is retained and built into the organism to serve as the basis of future action. A deed, good or bad. Upon maturing, it delivers its fruit. There are 4 Ghati and 4 Aghati types of Karmas. Effects of Ghati karmas are much stronger, and they last for many lives.

The Jain theory of karma explains karma in terms of karmic particles and makes distinction in the karma as of eight types. Similarly, the karmic effect may be wholesome or may be bad. Jains have given a scientific theory of karma.

**Karmana Sarira** The karmic body, is very subtle, and is responsible for the various karmic effects.

**Kasaya** Arises due to karmic influx. The kasayas are the root cause of birth and death that is cycle of transmigration.

**Kausagga** A standing posture of meditation, giving up attachment to the body; a motionless state of body, as if the soul has departed from it.

**Kayotsarga** Same as Kausagga, above.

**Kesariya modaka** A sweet prepared from wheat flour, sugar and ghee (clarified butter) with sufficient addition of saffron to impart colour and flavour.

**Kevala darsana** Omniscient intuitive knowledge.

**Kevala jnana** See Jnana.

**Kevaldarshan** Infinite perception. After acquiring it, the cycle of births and deaths is broken forever. Any soul can attain it, by getting rid of Karmas, attachments and hatreds. With it come Kevalgnan, infinite Dhairya, Tapa and Veerya.

**Kevaldarshi** One who has Kevaldarshan.

**Kevalajnana** Omniscient perfect knowledge.

**Kevalgnan** Infinite knowledge

**Kevali/gnani** One who has Kevalgnan.

**Khordad Sal** remembrance of the birth of Prophet Zarathushtra.

**Kinnara** See Deva.

**Ksaya** Destruction of karma.

**Kshetra** An area, site, or location where human lives exist. Each Kshetra has four more similar counterparts.

**Lesya** A specific theory of the Jains which says that the soul gets colour due to radiation from various activities.

**Mahadeva, Siva** The Destroyer-god of the Hindu pantheon.

**Mahavideha** Name of a Kshetra. Twenty Tirthankars are there in existence, right now, so they are the most sacred Kshetras.

**Mahavira** Twenty-fourth tirthankara of the Jains, a senior contemporary of Gautama Buddha.

**Mahavir Jayanti** (Janma Kalyānak) Festival honouring Lord Mahavira on the founder's birthday. Shrines are visited. Teachings are reviewed and reflected upon.

**Mahavrat** A vow that is much stricter than an Anuvrat. Only Sadhus dare to take it. There are five Mahavrats.

**Mantra** Prayer with magical powers, charms.

**Maunajiyaras** Day of fasting, silence, and meditation on the five holy teachers.

**Michchhami** Dissolution.

**Mohaniya** Ghati Karma that deludes the capacity of soul of thinking properly.

**Moksha** The state of liberation for a soul, which takes place when the soul is liberated, perfected and enlightened because of the total release from the clutches of matter-particles.

**Muktishila** The topmost area of universe, the area of freedom. After death, a liberated soul rises to it, and never comes back from there. Every soul in there has infinite Gnan, Darshan Dhairya, Tapa, and Veerya.

**Muni** Literally, one who keeps control of the tongue, taking a vow of non-speaking. One who keeps Maun (silence). He only observes, without praising or complaining.

**Muni Subrata** Twentieth tirthankara of the Jains.

**Naam** An Aghati Karma that determines the physique.

**Naigama naya** The point of view which has a purpose or an end.

**Nama niksepa** The understanding of a thing by mean of its name, i.e., proper names without reference to their nature. It is the dialectical process.

**Namokara** (also navakara or namaskara) This is the core mantra of the Jains, if it can be called by that name. Translated into English, it's only an obeisance to the five agents of well-being, called pancha- paramesthi.

**Nandanavana** A forest well known for its beauty, said to be located between Mount Meru and Devakuru.

**Narakas** Hells. As per the Jain view of cosmos, there are seven hells: Ratnaprabha, Sarkaraprabha, Valukaprabha, Pankaprabha, Dhumaprabha, Tamahprabha, Mahatamahprabha

**Naraka** The nether world where hellish beings reside.

**Navkar** A prayer consisting of nine lines, the most meaningful of all the prayers.

**Navatattva** Nine fundamental principles of Jainism. A precise knowledge about these is essential for the liberation of the soul which is in bondage. These are: Jiva (souls); Ajiva (non-living substances). In this group are dharma (motion), adharma (rest), akasa (space), kala (time), and pudgala (matter- particles); Asrava (influx of karma in the form of matter-particles which stick to the soul spaces and act as fetters); Bandha (bondage); Punya (virtue); Papa (vice); Samvara (arresting karma influx); Nirjara (exhausting accumulated karma). These nine can be reduced to two, jiva and ajiva, which are the very basic of basic principles. Others simply help to understand the process of karma bondage until liberation.

**Naya** A point of view.

**Nica gotra** The lower and miserable state of an individual with reference to its individual and social status.

**Nidhatta** the state of condition (karmic) in which the increase or decrease of the intensity of the karma is determined by the capacity of the karmic condition. It does not refer to the rise (Udaya) or any other karmic state.

**Nigoda** The particular state of jiva is nigoda, in which it may reside for infinite period of time.

**Nikacita** A state of karmic particles in which there is neither increases nor decreases in the intensity of the karmic effect. Nor is there transformation of karmic process.

**Niksepa** A dialectical process which presents the various aspects for understanding the nature of the things through the point of view of substance, dravya, its qualities and proper name etc.

**Nirjara** A process of the removal of the accumulated karmas.

**Nirvana** Freedom from bondage of the worldly existence.

**Niscaya naya** The noumenal point of view.

**Niyativada** Determinism as a theory.

**Noindriya pratyaksa** The form of pratyaksa which is due to the noindriya i.e. mind, without the help of the sense organs.

**Nyasa** A method of knowing the nature of a thing from various points of view. It is also called niksepa.

**Pachchakhan** Formality for taking a vow.

**Pad** Line of a poem, or a step.

**Palyopama** A measure of time by the Jain standards.

**Panch** Five.

**Panchendriya** Lives with five senses, namely touch, taste, smell, sight, and hearing.

**Papa** Demerit.

**Paryarthika naya** The point of view of modes.

**Paryushana Parva** 8 day festival signifying human emergence into a new world of spiritual and moral refinement. Marked by recitations from Jain sacred writing and family exchange of cards and letters. Celebration of the natural qualities of the soul. The 8th day (Samvatsari) is most important and is focused on forgiveness.

**Parsva** Twenty-third tirthankara of the Jains.

**Parvati** Consort of Siva of the Hindu pantheon, Mother-Goddess.

**Pausadha** A religious practice in which the lay follower spends a night like a monk.

**Pindaprakrti** The aggregate of the many sub-types of karma.

**Poshadh** A day chosen by a householder to live like a Muni.

**Pratikraman** Going back to the original virtues (of soul), which include compassion, peace, even-temperament, forgiveness, etc.

**Pratikramana** A confession for lapses, omissions and commissions to oneself. This is to be done daily, fortnightly, and yearly.

**Pudgala** Matter.

**Pundarik** The best lotus.

**Pushakarvar** Name of a Dweep. Only half of it is used for living.



**Rajlok** The universe is divided into 14 Rajloks, consisting of hells, Dweepes, heavens, etc.

**Rjusutranaya** The point of view of the momentary present. The Buddhist point of view is an example of rjusutranaya.

**Sadhu** A man who has given up the family life, wealth, and worldly comforts for seeking liberation, and learning religious scriptures.

**Sadhvi/ji** A female Sadhu / Monk

**Saivism** A branch of Hinduism which worships Siva as the principal deity.

**Samayika** Concentration on religious themes for a duration of 48 minutes.

**Samhanana** a state of the bondage due to the rise of certain types of karma. It refers to the bones of the body.

**Samiti** (control) A form of moral rules which refers to the control of movement, control of speech and control of niksepana, etc.; five areas of cautiousness: walking, speaking, taking food, handling materials, and discarding excreta.

**Samayik** State of calmness and equanimity of mind and speech. Usually 48 minutes for householders, and a lifetime for Sadhus.

**Samjna** Instincts. It refers to the instinctive urges of all animals including even the heavenly beings regarding hunger, fear, sex urge and the instinct of possession.

**Samjni** Jiva which possesses samjna, i.e., mind, by the help of it, they can learn, think, understand etc.

**Santhara/o** Peaceful, voluntary and planned religious death.

**Samvara** A process to stop the influx of the new karmas.

**Sanghata** The aggregate of the particles. The atomic aggregate.

**Sankramana** Transformation of one form of the sub-type of karma into another form of sub-type of the same karma.

**Sanvar** Prevention of influx of Karmas.

**Sasan-devi** Attending deity of the tirthankaras. These have male counterparts, too, called Sasan deva. They are also called yaksa and yaksini. Since the tirthankaras are free from attachment (vitaraga), they do not help their devotees. It is from the attending deity that the devotee receives help.

**Sat** a reality, which refers to the origination, the destruction and the permanence of the state of a thing.

**Saudharma loka** See Kalpas.

**Siddhas** Liberated souls who reside in the topmost region of the spheres called Siddhasila.

**Sramana** As distinguished from the Brahmana, the Sramana cult in India sheltered innumerable creeds, including Jainism and Buddhism, often called heretical, which did not believe in the authority of the Vedas.

**Sravika** Lay followers, male and female, in the Jain order.

**Sthapana niksepa** The dialectical form of understanding the nature of a thing by the recognition of the present state.

**Sthavara** The stationery souls like Sthavara jivas, the earth and water-bodied beings, plant...etc.

**Shikshavrat** Four vows, which prepare and train a householder for the eventual Muni life.

**Shravak/ji** Male householder, following the principles of Jainism.

**Sravaka, Sravika** Lay follower of the Jain order, male and female. They are required to observe 12 vows (see Vratas) in order to be so called. Mere birth

in a Jain household does not entitle one to be called a sravaka or sravika unless s/he fulfils the 12 vows.

**Shravika** Female householder, like above.

**Sresthi** A merchant; literally, the best (among men). Merchants were so designated in India because of the valuable service they could render to the society by dint of their wealth holding.

**Shri** A prefix used to indicate respect.

**Siddha** One who has achieved liberation from cycles of births and deaths, and now in Mukdishila.

**Sootra** A scripture, written in Ardhamagadhi language.

**Subhanama** The Nama karma which brings auspicious bodily organs, sweet melodious sound, fame etc. to an individual.

**Sulsa** A great sravika at the time of Lord Mahavira. She was the wife of a chariot driver named Naga, who was related to King Prasenajit. At first, she had no son. Later 32 sons were born to her, all with the same life span. They were in the service of King Srenika of Rajagriha. Lord Mahavira praised this lady for her devotion and steadfastness.

**Suksma** (subtle) It neither causes hindrance to others, nor other things can hinder it.

**Svadhya** The self-study or the study of holy scriptures means to promote the spiritual realization of the self.

**Svadhya** To ruminate on the lessons received from the spiritual preceptor (upadhyaya).

**Syadvada** The theory of seven-fold predications to express the comprehensive nature of the things. It is the special contribution of the Jains to the world thought.

**Taijasa sarira** In modern technology it can be called as Electric body.

**Talaputa** A species of snake which is extremely venomous.

**Tapa** (Austerity) Penance, meant to destroy the eight types of karma. A pure soul has infinite Tapa.

**Tassa** For that.

**Teindriya** Lives with three senses, namely touch, taste, and smell.

**Tiragan** celebration in honour of Tishtat - the Dog Star. Recognises dogs as helpers of humanity. May involve splashing people with water.

**Tirthankar** Founder of the Jain order from time to time; one who re-establishes the religion and fourfold society of Sadhus, Sadhis, Shravaks, and Sharavikas. Tirtha means order, which is four-fold, consisting of the monks, nuns, and male and female lay-followers. In the present time-cycle as conceived by the Jains, there have in all been 24 tirthankaras, headed by Adinatha Risabha. The last three (Aristanemi, a contemporary of Krishna in the line of Yadu; Parsva, a prince from Kasi; and Mahavira, the senior contemporary of Gautama Buddha) are historical persons.

**Trasa Nama karma** The rise of the karma by which are two to five-sensed organisms are born.

**Uccagotra** The state of the individual existence in this life with reference to his position, society, his power, form and other status in social life. This high state of social existence is attained due to the good karmas.

**Udirana** That process by which the karmic matter of long duration and fruition power is brought in udayavalika so that they can be experienced soon.

**Udvartana** The increase in the duration and intensity of experience of karma.

**Udvartanakarana** To increase the intensity of the karmas which are beyond udayavalika.

**Upakaranendriya** These are the material sense organs of the body, which are helpful in perception. For example, a man seen by the help of cornea, so cornea is upakaranendriya.

**Upadhyay/ji** A Sadhu who is learned, has mastered, and teaches religious scriptures.

**Upayoga** The energy of the soul, which is responsible for the knowledge and intuition (jnana and darsana).

**Utsarpini** Up-phase of the Jain time-cycle

**Vaikriya (sarira)** Fluid (body). Other four body forms are (1) audarika (gross); (2) aharaka (assimilative); (3) taijasa (caloric); and (4) karman (made of karma particles).

**Vedaniya** An Aghati Karma that determines the pain and/or pleasure giving situations.

**Vandana** Act of bowing, or offering salutations

**Veerya** Strength or vigour. A pure soul has infinite vigour.

**Vidyadhara** A species of human beings who are in possession of some special arts, like flying. They were so called because they were in possession of certain vidyas, e.g., flying through the sky, which were bestowed on them by the first tirthankara, Risabha.

**Vishnu** The Protector-god of the Hindu pantheon.

**Vitraag** One whose attachment (for materials) is gone.

Sometimes "ji" or "dev" is added as a suffix for additional respect, where indicated.

**Vrat** Vow. Five Great Vows (mahavratas) are: 1. Ahimsa (not to kill) 2. Amrisa (not to tell a lie) 3. Achaurya (not to steal) 4. Amaithuna (not to indulge in sexual behaviour) 5. Aparigraha (not to have attachments/possessions). These are to be followed in their most rigorous form, and without lapse, by the monks and nuns. The same five, when prescribed for members of the lay order, become somewhat lenient. These are called Lesser Vows (anuvratas), and then they take the following names: 1. Pranatipata viramana (to desist from killing) 2. Mirsavada viramana (to desist from telling lies) 3. Adattadana viramana (not to accept when not rightly bestowed) 4. Maithuna viramana (to desist from sexual behaviour) 5. Parigraha parimana (to fix the size of acquisition) To illustrate, a householder is permitted to cook food even though this may mean some slaughter of minute animals. A householder is permitted to indulge in sexual behaviour with his wife, but not with any other woman. And so on. This is a restricted form of the vow for the lay followers, consistent with the fulfilment of their responsibility as householders. but to atone for these relaxations, seven more vows have been added for the followers as follows: 1. Bhogopabhoga parimana or limiting objects to be used. 2. Dik parimana or limiting the sphere/direction of movement. 3. Anartha-danda viramana or not to indulge in sinful acts not necessary for the maintenance of oneself or one's family. 4. Samayika or concentrating for a duration of 48 minutes on spiritual themes, which may be repeated several times a day. 5.

Desavahasika or setting new limits every day within the limits already imposed, thereby restricting further and further one's free life. 6. Pausadha or living for a day like a monk, or even for a day and night, raising the restricted vow to the level of total vows. 7. Atithi-sambibhaga or serving monks, nuns, and other deserving guests. Of these seven, the first three are called gunavratas because they intensify the five anuvratas, and the last four are siksavratas, because they are preliminary disciplines for entering into the life of a monk. Apart from observing the five Great Vows, the monks are required to practice ten virtues, specifically mentioned, and practice elaborate meditation.

**Vyapti** A foundational principle of inference. It refers to the universal relation between the middle term and the major term.

**Yaksa** A species of celestial beings residing in the uppermost strata of the Ratnaprabha hell, just bordering the earth.

**Yogi, Yogini** Yoga is the Hindu system of philosophic meditation and asceticism designed to bring about the reunion of the devotee's soul with the Superior Reality. A devotee, male or female, of yoga. (In original Jain terminology, yoga implied activities of the body, mind and speech which create fetters, and was therefore to be discarded. In later periods, however, many Jain monks have practiced yoga in the Hindu sense.).

**64 Yoginis** Attendants of the Mother-Goddess in the Hindu pantheon.

**Yojana** About 8 English miles. 2 miles make one kosa, and 4 kosas make one yojana.

**Zarathosht Diso** Anniversary of the death of Prophet Zarathushtra.

# JEHOVAH'S WITNESSES GLOSSARY



**Active Force** See Holy Spirit.

**Adams, Don** Was elected sixth Watchtower Bible and Tract Society (WBTS) president in 2000, at the age of 75.

**Advent, Second (of Christ)** See Presence.

**Age of Accountability** The age (generally early teens) when a child is considered accountable to God to dedicate his life to the Organization, having sufficient knowledge of JEHOVAH'S WITNESS truth. Putting off dedication and baptism is a sin punishable by eternal death at Armageddon.

**Anointed** The members of the spiritual Body of Christ or Christian Congregation, numbering 144,000 (Rev. 7:4-8). Those members of Christ's Body who are deceased are reigning with Jesus in heaven since 1918. The remaining members still on earth, approximately 8,000 are known as the remnant. They are collectively known as God's channel of communication to men.

**Anointed class** Jehovah's Witnesses believe that only a limited number of people (144,000) will live in a spiritual heaven with King Jesus. All other faithful Jehovah's Witness believers will live on a paradise-like earth.

**AntiChrist** All the enemies of Christ are the composite person designated antiChrist.

**Appointed Times of the Nations** (Lk. 21:24)-- A period of 2520 years, dating from the destruction of Jerusalem (607 B.C.) to 1914, in which God's rule was under restraint. In 1914 the Appointed times ended with Jesus taking power as heavenly king. Also called "Gentile Times" or "Times of the Gentiles".

**Armageddon** The end of this present system of things when Jehovah will destroy all people but the faithful among Jehovah's Witnesses (Rev. 16:16). Jehovah's Witnesses believe that a total world battle will take place soon. All people and institutions not affiliated with them will be destroyed. King Jesus and His heavenly host will battle with Satan and his armies. Satan will be defeated.

**Associates** Non-baptized persons who attend Kingdom Hall meetings and may also be publishers.

**Authority** (over Jehovah's Witnesses) See **Faithful and Discreet Slave**.

**Awake!** A semi-monthly family magazine published by the WBTS, which features articles about human interests, religion, and practical sciences; one of the major publications of the Watchtower Bible and Tract Society.

**Babylon the Great** All religious organizations outside of Jehovah's Witnesses, destined for destruction at Armageddon.

**Back calls** The Jehovah's Witness visitor will make return calls if a person shows even a little interest or requests more information on the initial visit. The WBTS encourages persistent visitation.

**Baptism** A candidate approved by the WBTS is totally immersed in water during a public meeting-usually a circuit assembly. Mass baptisms are also conducted and candidates may number in the hundreds at one service.

**Bethel** This is the designation given to the official headquarters of the Watchtower Bible and Tract Society, located at 25 Columbia Heights, Brooklyn, NY.

**Beth Sarim "House of Princes"** A mansion built in 1929 in San Diego, CA to await the soon-return of many Old Testament notables. Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, etc.

**Bible Students** Original name of Jehovah's Witnesses.

**Bible study** Faithful Jehovah's Witnesses stress a literal belief in the Bible and seek to engage interested people in home Bible studies.

**Book Study** A programmed study of a Watchtower Society book. Questions are asked on points made in the paragraphs of the book. The Bible is often referred to for reference, but not used as the main study book.

**Born Again** The prospect of members of the Anointed (see definition) only, to go to the heavenly kingdom. No other Jehovah's Witnesses, except the anointed sons of God, are born again and go to heaven.

**Blood** The soul is in the blood (see Lev. 17:11, 14). Blood is sacred because life is sacred. The only proper use of blood is sacrifice (see Lev. 11). "If animal blood is sacred, how much more is that of a human, and how much more reprehensible is cannibalism."

**Bloodguilt** Guilt is acquired: 1) by bloodshed, including support of a blood-guilty organization such as Babylon the Great (see Rev. 3:17); 2) by eating or drinking blood in any way (see Acts 15:20); or 3) by failing to preach the good news of the kingdom (see Acts 18:6).

**Body of Christ** See Anointed.

**Branch committee** Committee appointed by the WBTS and has general oversight of the Jehovah's Witnesses congregations in an entire country or group of countries.

**Channel of Communication** See **Anointed** and **Watchtower**.

**Christendom** Critical term used to refer to Protestant and Catholic groups, which are thought to have been established in the fourth century by the unbaptized Roman emperor, Constantine the Great.

**Christian** A JEHOVAH'S WITNESS minister.

**Circuit** A group of about 20 Jehovah's Witness congregations is known as a circuit. A circuit overseer is the supervisor of the group.

**Circuit assembly** Member congregations of the circuit gather at specified times for fellowship and inspiration. The sessions are usually held in a public facility. Mass baptisms of new converts are often conducted at these meetings.

**Circuit overseer** This official leader of the circuit visits each congregation two or three times a year, and usually stays a week at a time.

**Coming, Second (of Christ)** See Presence.

**Company** Another name for a Jehovah's Witnesses congregation.

**Congregation Group** Of no more than 200 Witnesses meeting at a Kingdom Hall.

**Congregation of God** See Anointed.

**Death** The separation of the life force (see definition) from the body.

**Dedication** Committing oneself to Jehovah by submitting to all the rules of the Watchtower Society, especially involving sales work.

**Disassociation** The voluntary departure of a JEHOVAH'S WITNESS from association with the JEHOVAH'S WITNESS community. See also

**Disfellowshipping.**

**Disfellowship** A member who is judged unfaithful is rejected by the WBTS. The suspension is usually for one year, and then the offending member is given an opportunity for reinstatement.

**Disfellowshipping** The practice of excommunication (shunning) Jehovah's Witnesses who break certain Organization rules and/or embarrass the Organization. See also **Disassociation.**

**District** Organization of about 10 circuits.

**District overseer** This leader supervises several circuits and is responsible for conducting circuit assemblies. He spends one week in the circuit for each assembly held.

**Divine Direction** The doctrine that the Governing Body of Jehovah's Witnesses receives direct information and oversight from God through his angels.

**Divine Mandate** See Procreation Mandate.

**Elder** Leader in a Kingdom Hall of Jehovah's Witnesses. Most Kingdom Halls have several Elders who divide up various areas of responsibility overseeing Witness activity.

**End of the World** The time of the destruction of all non-Jehovah's Witnesses and their associates.

**Everlasting Life** Life lived on paradise earth by faithful JEHOVAH'S WITNESS humans. It will never end for those who remain faithful to God.

**Evil Slave** Former members of the Anointed (see definition) Jehovah's Witnesses who turn against the work of Jehovah's Witnesses.

**Expelling** Also referred to as excommunication or disfellowship - members maybe expelled for several reasons including: adultery, homosexuality, greed, dishonesty, drunkenness, murder, idolatry, apostasy, and divisiveness. The offending member may be received back if he or she manifests sincere repentance.

**Faith** "To maintain a firm faith requires putting up a hard fight for it, resisting men who could plunge one into immorality, combating the works of the flesh, avoiding the snare of materialism, shunning faith-destroying philosophies and traditions of men, and above all, looking intently at the Chief Agent and Perfecter of our faith, Jesus."

**Faithful and Discreet Slave** The small group (class) of Anointed Jehovah's Witnesses who serve as the spiritual leadership to the million of Jehovah's Witnesses worldwide. See the definition for Anointed. Also called the Faithful and Wise Servant (Mt. 24:45).

**Field ministry** House-to-house sales activity.

**Fasting** "Christians are neither under command to fast nor prohibited from doing so."

**Franz, Frederick W.** He was elected fourth WBTS president in 1977. He died in 1992 at the age of 99.

**Gehenna** A condition (not a place) in which there is no resurrection hope for a person; same as "the lake of fire" (Rev. 21); the second death.

**Gentile times** Jehovah's Witnesses believe this is the period (from 607 B.C. to 1914 A.D.) when Jews were in disfavour with Jehovah.

**Gifts of the Spirit** Paul lists nine manifestations of the Spirit. They are not to be used for selfish profit. Speaking in tongues is a lesser gift, and is only used when someone can interpret.

**Gilead School** A school to train JEHOVAH'S WITNESS missionaries for foreign service. "Gilead" means "witness-heap", heap that stands as a witness to some event or transaction.

**Good News** The main teaching of Jehovah's Witnesses. The doctrine is that in the year 1914, Jesus set up an invisible kingdom in heaven and that it will soon destroy all earthly kingdoms at Armageddon (Dan 2:24). This will result in a paradise earth filled only with Jehovah's Witnesses. This is the message preached, in whole or in part (Mt. 24:14).

**Good will person** This is a person who is interested in Bible study and is a prospective member of Jehovah's Witnesses. Those who are not interested are called goats.

**Governing body** This select committee of about 15 WBTS leaders determines and establishes all doctrines and practices of the Jehovah's Witnesses.

**Great crowd or other sheep** This is the multitude of people that are faithful to Jehovah, but not selected for heavenly life. They will live in the paradise established on earth after Armageddon.

**Great Tribulation** See Armageddon. The Great Tribulation is especially for the destruction of Christendom (Rev. 17:1-5,16,17).

**Hades** The WBTS says this refers to "the common grave of all mankind, where the dead and buried ones are unseen." It corresponds to Sheol.

**Hell** The WBTS does not believe it is a place of torment or fire. They reject the doctrine of eternal punishment, saying all non-Jehovah's Witnesses will be annihilated at the final judgment. A condition of non-existence which non-Jehovah's Witnesses go into at death.

**Henschel, Milton G.** Was elected fifth WBTS president in December 1992, at the age of 73. He resigned in 2000.

**Holy spirit** A divine force, not a person as in Trinitarian Christianity.

**Immortality** Life which can never end. Only God, Jesus (Michael the archangel), and resurrected Anointed Jehovah's Witnesses have immortality. See also Everlasting Life.

**Impalement (of Jesus)** The WBTS says the Greek term stauros in both the classical and koine Greek carries no thought of a cross made of two timbers. Instead, they believe it means only an upright stake. The idea of a two-piece cross was adopted from the pagans in the third century.

**Inspiration** The special direction God gave to the writers of the Bible to present infallibly accurate information.

**International Bible** This group supervises Jehovah's Witness ministries in Canada and England.

**Jehovah** (Also "Jehovah God.") The name of God, strongly emphasized by Witnesses. It means "He Causes to Become." He is the only true God, Creator and Sovereign. Jesus is not Jehovah.



**Jehovah's Witnesses** Those who witness the Good News (see definition) to the public under the direction of the Watchtower Society.

**Jehovah's Woman** God's entire heavenly and earthly organisation. Primary members are heavenly spirits, secondary members are the Anointed (see definition) Jehovah's Witnesses.

**Jesus Christ** The first created Son of God, also known as Michael the archangel. He died so that men could work their way into God's Kingdom. He rules over this Kingdom invisibly since 1914. See Presence.

**Kingdom** The rule of God through Jesus Christ and his 144,000 Anointed JEHOVAH'S WITNESS associates.

**Kingdom Hall** The meeting place and house of worship of Jehovah's Witnesses. They are usually simple and austere.

**Kingdom Ministry School** A special school for the instruction of JEHOVAH'S WITNESS elders in training them to oversee their congregation's activities. Kingdom publishers Majority of Jehovah's Witnesses. Expected to spend five hours per week at meetings in Kingdom Hall and as much time as possible witnessing.

**Knorr, Nathan H.** Was born in 1905 and was elected third WBTS president in 1942. He died in 1977.

**Last Supper** See Memorial.

**Life-Force** Also called "spirit". The "breath of life" or energy which gives life to created heavenly or earthly organisms.

**Life-Pattern** The record of a person's life, i.e., his characteristics, achievements; the way he is perceived by God.

**Materialisation (of Jesus)** The man Jesus is forever dead (non-existent). After Christ's (Michael the archangel's) resurrection, he appeared temporarily as a man to convince the disciples that Jesus had risen. The form of a man was a materialisation.

**Memorial** The Jehovah's Witnesses annual observance of Christ's death on the Jewish date of Nissan 14. A talk is given teaching the death of Jesus and the New Covenant being established only for Anointed Jehovah's Witnesses, who alone are allowed to partake of the emblems. See Anointed.

**Michael the Archangel** The first created and most powerful angel. He became Jesus Christ, died for Jehovah's Witnesses sins, and rose from the dead. He now rules in heaven with resurrected Anointed Jehovah's Witnesses.

**Millennium** According to Jehovah's Witnesses, this is a period of 1,000 years that follows Armageddon and consists of paradise on earth for the faithful survivors and a selected group of resurrected people.

**Minister** A publisher (door-to-door salesperson) who has dedicated his life to God and the JEHOVAH'S WITNESS Organization and symbolized the dedication by water baptism.

**Ministerial Servant** JEHOVAH'S WITNESS men who are assigned to aid the JEHOVAH'S WITNESS elders in the Kingdom Hall. They attend to the everyday activities such as the assignment of literature and territory to Jehovah's Witnesses, serving as attendants, etc.

**Mother** The heavenly organization of spirits whom Jehovah calls his wife.

This spirit group mother's the Anointed (see definition) JEHOVAH'S WITNESS sons of God. See also Jehovah's Woman.

**New World Translation of the Holy Scriptures (NWT)** The NWT is the official translation of the Old and New Testaments by the WBTS. One unique and disturbing feature is that, in some cases, conventional translations are changed to fit Jehovah's Witness theology.

**Obeisance** Giving due respect to Jesus. This is not worship, which is reserved for God alone.

**Organization** This refers to the Remnant group of Jehovah's Witnesses, also called the Anointed. This small group of approximately 8,000 people represents God on earth. The millions of other Jehovah's Witnesses work along with God's Organization and consider themselves associated with it.

**Other Sheep** See Great Crowd.

**Paradise** The restored perfect earth after Armageddon where only faithful Jehovah's Witnesses will live

**People's Pulpit Association** The first Jehovah's Witness president organized this movement in 1909. The name was changed to the Watchtower Bible and Tract Society in 1939.

**Place** Jehovah's Witnesses sell (place) Watchtower publications to the public by taking contributions for them.

**Presence** Also called Second Advent or Coming. In 1914 Jesus turned his attention to the affairs of earth by establishing an invisible heavenly Kingdom. He will not return visible to the earth, but is invisibly present in heaven since 1914.

**Procreation Mandate** Filling the earth with children. Jehovah's Witnesses look forward to filling the new paradise earth with children growing up in perfect health and knowledge. Formerly called the Divine mandate.

**Pioneer** A JEHOVAH'S WITNESS who puts in a minimum of 90 hours per month in door-to-door sales activity and holds book studies with potential converts.

**Pioneer publishers** Jehovah's Witnesses who hold part-time jobs and try to devote 100 hours per month to religious service.

**Publisher** This is the name given to faithful Jehovah's Witnesses who sell WBTS literature door-to-door and serve the WBTS as directed.

**Remnant** The remaining Anointed still on the earth today numbering approximately 8,000. See Anointed and Organization.

**Resurrection** God's placing of a newly created copy of a life-pattern (see definition) into a newly created organism, heavenly or earthly.

**Return of Christ** See Presence.

**Russell, Charles Taze** The founder and first president of the Jehovah's Witness movement. He was born in 1852 and died in 1916. He was known for his prolific writing.

**Rutherford, Joseph Franklin** Born in 1869 and became the second president of the WBTS in 1917. He is responsible for the present-day organization of the WBTS. He died in 1942.

**Salvation** The Jehovah's Witnesses do not preach that one must personally accept Jesus Christ as Lord and Saviour. They dedicate their lives to Jehovah and live the lifestyle prescribed by the WBTS. They espouse a works type of salvation.

**Service and Study Reports** The monthly written reports required by the Watchtower Society of all Jehovah's Witnesses. The Jehovah's Witnesses report all publications placed (sold), magazine subscriptions secured, Return Visits, Bible studies and hours spent in the work.

**Service Meeting** A 45-minute, held weekly to train Jehovah's Witnesses to be more effective in their sales presentations, and how to hold book studies with potential converts, etc.

**Society, the** Sometimes used to describe WBTS leaders who are directed by God.

**Son of God** Michael the archangel, the first-created person, not the eternal God.

**Special pioneers** Full-time, salaried employees of the Watchtower Society, who spent at least 150 hours per month in religious service.

**Spirit (human)** See Life Force.

**Students Association Kingdom Hall** This local meeting house is never pretentious and is usually limited to a seating capacity of 200. Meetings are presided over by an overseer and his five assistants.

**Superior Authorities** The governing political rulers of this old world (Ro. 13:1-7).

**Tartarus** A condition (not a place) of the fallen angels who sinned by taking human wives before the time of the flood (2 Pet. 2:4; Gen 6:2-4; Jude 6). Their condition is to be cut off from God's organization.

**Theocracy** The rule of God. In 1914 Jesus set up an invisible theocratic government in heaven, which rules the lives of Jehovah's Witnesses through Christ's chosen channel, the Watchtower Bible and Tract Society.

**Times of the Gentiles** See Appointed Times of the Nations.

**Theocracy** Jehovah's Witnesses do not have a democratic organization. They submit to the control of a few leaders and believe that the entire organization is under the direct rule of Jehovah. They believe they have a theocratic ministry to perform.

**Trinity** Jehovah's Witnesses do not believe in the Trinity. Jehovah God is alone in authority and has no equal. The Holy Spirit is not a person, but an active force of God. Jesus is a being created by Jehovah.

**Truth** Any and all JEHOVAH'S WITNESS teachings.

**The Watchtower** (Full title: The Watchtower Announcing Jehovah's Kingdom.) Small magazine/tract published semi-monthly by the Watchtower Bible and Tract Society of New York. Its stated purpose is to exalt Jehovah God and keep watch on world events as they fulfil Bible prophecy. First published in 1879.

**Watchtower Bible and Tract Society** "A legal organization in use by Jehovah's Witnesses."

**Watchtower publication of subjects described and explained** The WBTS issues this official compilation of all materials published since 1930.

**Wine and strong drink** Alcoholic drinks are regarded as gifts from Jehovah, but must be used in moderation (see Ps. 104:14-15). Drunkenness is condemned in the Bible. Habitual drunkenness is cause for expulsion from the congregation (see 1 Cor. 5:11-13). There are also times one should not drink wine or liquor (see Lev. 10:8-11; Rom. 14:21).

**Worship (of Christ)** See Obeisance.

**Year** In prophecy it is often used in a special sense as the equivalent of 360 days (12 months of 30 days each). It is also called a time and sometimes a day (see Gen. 7:11, 8:3-5).

**Yearbook of Jehovah's Witnesses** Published each year, it reports the worldwide statistics and service of faithful members. Daily Bible readings and comments are also included.

# JUDAISM GLOSSARY



Most of the terms included in this section are Hebrew in origin. However, since the Jewish diaspora, many terms reflect the different countries where Jews have settled. For example, many words are in Yiddish, a common language (a mixture of German, Russian and Hebrew) developed by Jews throughout Central and Eastern Europe. The preferred form in this glossary uses the Sephardic pronunciation, which is equivalent to modern Hebrew as spoken in Israel today. As with all transliterations, there may be acceptable differences in the ways in which words are spelt.

**Abraham** First well know Jewish person and one of the founders of the Jewish faith. Muslims also respect him as a prophet and a worshipper of Allah.

**Afikomen** (Greek) Dessert. Portion of a matzah eaten near the end of the Seder.

**Agadah** Aggadah Telling. Rabbinical teachings on moral values.

**Aleinu** Key prayer at the conclusion of each service.

**Aliyah** To go up. (i) Being called to read the Sefer Torah in the synagogue. (ii) The migration of Jews to Israel.

**Amidah** Standing. The standing prayer.

**Aron Hakodesh** Holy Ark. The focal point of the synagogue, containing Torah scrolls.

**Ashkenazim** Jews of Central and Eastern European origin.

**Bar Mitzvah** Son of Commandment. A boy's coming of age at 13 years old, usually marked by a synagogue ceremony and family celebration.

**Bat Mitzvah** Bat Chayil Daughter of Commandment. As above, but for girls from 12 years old. May be marked differently between communities.

**Bet ha Knesset** Beit ha Knesset Shul House of Assembly. Synagogue.

**Bimah** Dais. Raised platform primarily for reading the Torah in the synagogue.

**Brit Milah** Berit Milah, Bris Circumcision.

**Canaan** The land where the Children of Israel made their home. Jews now call it the land of Israel.

**Challah** Hallah Enriched bread used particularly on Shabbat and during festivals.

**Chazan** Hazan Cantor Leader of reading, singing and chanting in the services of some synagogues.

**Chumash** Five. The Torah in book form, used in the synagogue and the home.

**Circumcision** Religious rite of Brit Milah, performed by a qualified mohel on all Jewish boys, usually on the eighth day after birth.

**Gemara** Gemarah Commentary on the Mishnah included in the Talmud.

**Genizah** Storage place for damaged religious texts.

**Gentiles** Non Jews.

**Haftarah** Completion. Passages from Nevi'im (Prophets) read in the synagogue (linked to weekly Torah and festival readings).

**Hagadah** Haggadah Telling. A book used at Seder.

**Halakhah** Halacha The Way. The code of conduct encompassing all aspects of Jewish life.

**Hanukiah** Chanukiah Menorah Nine-branched Hanukkah lamp used at the festival of Hanukkah.

**Hanukkah** Chanukah Dedication. An eight-day festival of lights to celebrate the re-dedication of the temple following the Maccabean victory over the Greeks in 165-164 B.C.E. Special readings and praise songs focus on liberty and freedom. The eight candle Menorah is lighted

**Hasid** Chasid Hasidim (pl.) Chasidim Pious. Member of the Orthodox movement of Hasidism.

**Hasidism** Chasidism A religious and social movement formed by Israel Baal Shem Tov (from the 18th century onwards).

**Havdalah** Distinction. Ceremony marking the conclusion of Shabbat.

**Hebrew** Ivrit Ancient Semitic language; language of the Tenakh (Hebrew-Scriptures) and used by Jews for prayer and study. Also, everyday language in Israel.

**Holocaust** Name given to the suffering of the Jewish people during the Second World War when six million Jews were murdered.

**Huppah** Chuppah Canopy used for a wedding ceremony, under which the bride and groom stand.

**Israel** One who struggles with God. The phrase refers to the world-wide Jewish community; the land of Israel and the modern state of Israel.

**Jerusalem** The capital of modern Israel; a sacred city for Jews, Christians and Muslims.

**Kabbalah** Cabala Jewish mysticism.

**Kaddish** Prayer publicly recited by mourners.

**Kashrut** Laws relating to keeping a kosher home and lifestyle.

**Ketubah** Ketubbah Document that defines rights and obligations within Jewish marriage.

**Ketuvim** Writings. Third section of the Tenakh.

**Kibbutz** Kibbutzim (pl.) Israeli collective village based on socialist principles.

**Kiddush** Holy. A prayer sanctifying Shabbat and festival days, usually recited over wine.

**Kippah** Yamulka Capel Head covering worn during prayers, Torah study, etc. Some followers wear it constantly.

**Knesset** Assembly. Israeli parliament.

**Kol Nidrei Kol Nidre** All vows. Prayer recited on the evening of Yom Kippur.

**Korach** Name of the leader who defied Moses in the wilderness

**Kosher** Kasher Fit; proper. Foods permitted by Jewish dietary laws.

**Ladino** Language used predominately by Sephardim.

**Lag B'Omer** Observation of the counting of the day - the link - between Pesach and Shavout.

**Levites** Were assistants in worship in the Temple

**Magen David** Shield of David, popularly called Star of David.

**Maimonides** Rabbi Moses ben Maimon (1135-1204), a leading Jewish philosopher, medical writer and codifier of Jewish law.

**Mashiach** Moshiach Messiah The anointed one who will herald in a new era for Judaism and all humankind.

**Matzah** Matzot (pl.) A flat cracker-like bread which has been baked before it rises; used at Pesach.

**Menorah** Seven-branched candelabrum which was lit daily in the Temple.

**Mezuzah** A scroll placed on doorposts of Jewish homes, containing a section from the Torah and often enclosed in a decorative case.

**Midrash** Collections of various Rabbinic commentaries on the Tenakh.

**Mikveh** Ritual bath used for the immersion of people and objects.

**Minyan** Quorum of ten men, over Bar Mitzvah age, required for a service. Progressive communities may include women but do not always require a minyan.

**Mishnah** First writing down of the Oral Tradition. An authoritative document forming part of the Talmud, codified about 200 CE.

**Mishkan** Dwelling. The original travelling sanctuary used prior to the building of the permanent Temple in Jerusalem.

**Mitzvah** Mitzvot (pl.) Commandment. The Torah contains 613 Mitzvot. Commonly used to describe good deeds.

**Mohel** Person trained to perform Brit Milah.

**Moses** A great leader of the early Jewish people.

**Moshav** Moshavim (pl.) Collective village or farm in Israel.

**Ner Tamid** Eternal light. The perpetual light above the Aron Hakodesh.

**Nevi'im** Prophets. Second section of the Tenakh.

**Noachide Laws** Seven laws given to Noah after the flood, which are incumbent on all humankind. These laws form the foundation for a just society.

**Oral teaching** Teaching passed on by word of mouth, not written down.

**Parev** Parveh Neutral foods, which are neither milk nor meat, eg, vegetables, eggs, fish.

**Pesach** Passover Festival commemorating the Exodus from Egypt. One of the three biblical pilgrim festivals. Pesach is celebrated in the spring. 8-day celebration during which the story of the Exodus is recounted, and the ongoing struggle of all peoples for freedom from internal and external tyranny is celebrated. A special meal is a central feature.

**Pikei Avot** Pirke Avot Sayings of the Fathers. Part of the Mishnah containing ethics of Rabbinical sages.

**Pikuakh Nefesh** Save a soul. The setting aside of certain laws in order to save a life.

**Progrom** Organised attack on Jews, especially frequent in 19th and early 20th century Eastern Europe.

**Prophet** A person called by God to tell the Jews how to use the Torah.

**Purim** Festival commemorating the rescue of Persian Jewry from genocide as

told in the book of Esther. Charity to the poor, sharing food with friends, and vigorous merrymaking mark the observance.

**Rabbi** My teacher. An ordained Jewish teacher. Often the religious leader of a Jewish community.

**Rashi** Rabbi Shlomo ben Yitzhak (1040 -1105). A French rabbinical scholar and leading commentator on the Torah and Talmud.

**Rebbe** Rabbi. The term used by Hasidim for their religious leader.

**Rosh Hashanah** Rosh Ha-Shanah Head of the Year. Jewish New Year. A time of introspection, abstinence, prayer and penitence. The story of Abraham is read, the ram's horn is sounded, and special foods are prepared and shared.

**Sadducees** Religious group who believed there was no after-life for the soul following death

**Samaritan** Someone from the region of Samaria

**Scribe** A copyist of manuscripts, and also a Jewish teacher.

**Scroll** A book that is written on a long piece of rolled-up paper or skin.

**Seder** Order. A home-based ceremonial meal during Pesach, at which the Exodus from Egypt is recounted using the Hagadah.

**Sefer Torah** Torah scroll. The five books of Moses handwritten on parchment and rolled to form a scroll.

**Sephardim** Sefardim Jews originating from Mediterranean countries, especially Spain, North Africa and the Middle East.

**Shabbat** Shabbos Day of spiritual renewal and rest commencing at sunset on Friday, terminating at nightfall on Saturday.

**Shatnez** Shaatnez Garments containing a forbidden mixture of wool and linen.

**Shavuot** Weeks. One of three pilgrim festivals. Shavuot is celebrated in the summer, seven weeks after Pesach. Plants and flowers are used in decorations.

**Shekhina** The divine presence.

**Shema** Major Jewish prayer affirming belief in one God. The Shema is found in the Torah.

**Shemini Azteret** Completion of the annual cycle of reading of the Torah.

**Shemot** Names. Seven holy names of God.

**Shiva** Seven days of intense mourning following the burial of a close relation. During this period, all ordinary work is prohibited.

**Shoah** Desolation. The suffering experienced by European Jews at the hands of the Nazis, including the systematic murder of six million Jews between 1933 and 1945.

**Shofar** Ram's horn blown at the season of Rosh Hashanah.

**Siddur** Order. Daily prayer book.

**Simchat Torah** Rejoicing of the law. Festival celebrating the completion and recommencement of the cycle of the weekly Torah reading. Synagogue services involve readings, processions and blessing of the children.

**Slichot** Jewish worship service to begin making repentance for wrongs done the past year.

**Sukkah** Sukkot (pl.) Tabernacle; booth. A temporary dwelling used during Sukkot



**Sukkot** One of three biblical pilgrim festivals, Sukkot is celebrated in the Autumn. It celebrates the harvest and the protection of the people of Israel as they wandered in the wilderness dwelling in tents. Temporary dwelling places have leaves for a roof so the sky can be seen. In temperate climates, night is spent in the Succoth.

**Synagogue** Shul Bet Haknesset Bet Hamidrash Building for Jewish public prayer, study and assembly.

**Tallit** Tallith Prayer shawl. Four-cornered garment with fringes.

**Talmud** Mishnah and Gemara, collected together.

**Tammuz, Seventeenth of** Traditional day of fasting to mourn over Jerusalem and the destruction of the Temple. Not universally observed.

**Tefillah** Tefila Self-judgement. Jewish prayer and meditation.

**Tefillin** Tephilin T'filin Phylacteries Small leather boxes containing passages from the Torah, strapped on the forehead and arm for morning prayers on weekdays.

**Tenakh** Tanakh The collected 24 books of the Jewish Bible, comprising three sections: Torah, Nevi'im, and Ketuvim (Te;Na;Kh).

**Teshuva** Repentance. Returning to God.

**Tikkun Olam** Tikun Care for the world and environment.

**Tishah B'av** Day of fasting in remembrance of the destruction of the Temple in 586 B.C.E. and 70 C.E.

**Torah** Law; teaching. The Five Books of Moses.

**Tu B'Av** Celebration of romance between couples.

**Tu B'shevat** Celebration of the coming of spring by preparation of foods native to Israel. It is also known as "New Year for Trees" - a method for determining the age of trees for tithing purposes.

**Tzedaka** Righteousness. An act of charity.

**Tzitzit** Tzittzit Fringes on the corners of the Tallit. Also commonly refers to the fringed undervest worn by some Jewish males.

**Yad** Hand-held pointer used in reading the Sefer Torah.

**Yahrzeit** Year-time. Anniversary of a death.

**Yeshiva** College for study of the Torah and Talmud.

**Yiddish** Language used predominantly by Ashkenazim.

**Yishuv** Ingathering. The Jewish community of Israel.

**Yom Hashoah** Day to commemorate the Shoah. The day has been established to remember the six million Jews killed by the Nazis in 1933-45. It is observed by many non-Jews as well.

**Yom Kippur** Day of Atonement. Fast day occurring on the tenth day after Rosh Hashanah; a solemn day of Tefillah and Teshuva. This holiest day of the Jewish year is observed with strict fasting and ceremonial repentance.

**Zionism** Political movement securing the Jewish return to the land of Israel.



## GLOSSARY OF PAGAN TERMS

**Adept** One who is very skilled in magick or mysticism.

**Air** One of the main "elements" in occultism; associated in the West with thought, knowledge, yellow, blue, swords, activity, daring, light, communication, heat, dampness, etc.

**Altar** Area or surface built or designed exclusively for magickal or religious workings and ritual.

**Alternative Lifestyle** A mode of living which differs significantly from the "mainstream" society's prescribed beliefs, affiliations, values, or practices. People who live an alternative lifestyle often gather with others who share their preferences; they may or may not retain close contact with the larger society. Many religions, including Paganism, fall into this category.

**Amulet** A natural object, often of stone or fossil used as a protection device to the holder.

**Ankh** (Angk) The most famous Egyptian hieroglyphic, the Ankh symbolizes life, love and reincarnation. It is often worn around the neck and is shaped like a cross with a loop on top.

**Arcana** Half of a tarot deck which is divided into two arcanas: the major arcana consisting of the 22 trumps of importance and the lesser arcana of 56 suit cards that help to divine the trump cards to a lesser degree.

**Astral Planes** Subjectively real "places" where some astral projectors perceive themselves as travelling; said to be multiple "levels" of (a) material density in the same space, and/or (b) awareness and concentration.

**Astrology** The belief and study of the effects of the movements and placements of planets and other heavenly bodies have on the lives and behaviour of human beings.

**Athame** (AH-tha-may) The ritual knife often associated with the element of air and the direction of east, though some traditions attribute it to fire and the south. The handle is traditionally black or of natural wood.

**Augury** Divination by means of whatever is most handy at the time.

**Aura** One or more energy fields supposedly generated by and surrounding all beings and many objects; those persons blessed with clairvoyance or other psychic talents can "read" the patterns of energy and determine information about the person or object

**Balefire** Synonymous with of 'Bonfire', a balefire is a communal bonfire of the sabbats, most notably used at Beltane, Litha and Lughnassadh.

**Bane** Negative force or energy. Another word for bad, negative, or in opposition.

**Banish** The removal of negative energy or force. To rid the presence of unwanted entities.

**Bealtaine** (Bee-Al-tin-aye) The old Irish word for 'Beltain'.

**Beltain** (Bell-tain) A grand sabbat also known as Walpurgis night, May eve, Roodmas, celebrates the conjoining of the goddess with the energy of the god in the sacred marriage which is the basis of all creation. Often celebrated April 30 or May 1, the true occurrence is more often May 5-7th. A time of

fertility and growth. A very important day to most Pagan paths.  
**Besom** (Beh-som) A witch's broom used to sweep a sacred area and in effect, purify the sacred space. Legend comes from early fertility rites where besoms were 'ridden' over crops to enhance the coming bounty.

**Bibliomancy** Divination through the random selection of words or phrases taken out of books, especially the Bible.

**Bind** Restraining one's self or someone, using magick.

**Blessed Be** A common phrase, used among Pagans as a greeting, a letter closing, or a statement of agreement. "Bright Blessings" appears in similar context. Although both phrases come from Wicca/Witchcraft they have spread into general use.

**Blessing** The use of magick to benefit an object or being.

**Book of Shadows** A witch's book of reference where all magical date, information, times, aspects, formulas and spells are enscribed. One of the most important tools as recorded happenings cannot be forgotten. Also known as a grimoire.

**Bolline** (Bowl-in) A curved knife, often white hilted, used for the magickal gathering of herbs and other natural reagents. Where as the athame is a religious knife, the bolline is its practical working sister.

**The Burning Times** A reference of time between approximately 1500 B.C.E. and the 1600's where many millions of people were murdered by the Christian church simply because they were 'non-believers'. Their possessions and assets seized at death, the Christian church often profited on the killings of witches.

**Cartomancy** Divination through the use of cards, especially Tarot Cards.

**Cauldron** Often replaced by the cup or chalice in ritual, this tool is used for making brews or magickal potions. Its symbolises the womb of the Goddess.

**Celtic** (Kel-tik) Of or for the old subfamily of the Indo-European language family comprised of the peoples of England, Ireland, Scotland, Wales, Brittany and some teutonic lands.

**Censer** A ritual tool used for burning incense during spellwork or ritual.

**Chalice** A ritual tool used in libation, this feminine principle tool represents the element water and the west.

**Chakra** One of the seven major energy centres in the human body. These are at the third eye, head, throat, chest, navel, abdomen and groin.

**Crystallomancy** Divination through the use of (usually) spheres of quartz crystal, glass or plastic as focussing devices.

**Circle** Sacred space where all magickal rituals and workings are performed. The circle not only protects the practitioner from outside energies but contains the working energies within.

**Consecration** Blessing an object (usually a ritual tool) to purify it and empowering it with positive energy.

**Coven** (Kuhv-en) A group of witches who work and rite together utilizing the greater empowerment of the sum of its members, as opposed to the power of those members added individually. Containing both male and female members, traditionally a coven has 13 members but may contain any number of members. Other Pagan traditions may call their groups by different names. "Coven" and "circle" are both very popular among Eclectic Pagans. Druids

usually say "grove" or "henge" instead. Asatru sometimes use "grange" or "stead."

**Craft Name:** Pagans customarily choose, or receive as a gift, a special name which evokes their unique personality and/or powers. Some take a completely new name, while others choose a historic or ethnic version of their given name. People may use their craft names all the time, or only during ritual; some even go through a legal name change. Examples include Lady Isadora, Starhawk, and M. Macha NightMare.

**Dagger** A ritual knife used for severing psychic bonds, exorcising, cursing and/or initiating.

**Dedication** The acceptance of the craft (of any way), as one's path and religion, followed by intense study to gain the necessary knowledge and preparation to be adept at this tradition.

**Deity** Synonymous with a god, goddess or godhead.

**Deosil** (Jesh-il) The working act usually in ritual or song of moving or dancing in a clockwise motion. This is used for positive works and is also known as "Sunwise".

**Divination** Any method used to foretell or inform of the future. Many popular forms include Astrology, Runes, Tarot, tea leaves, the pendulum, scrying, meditation, crystal balls, astrology, channelling and many more. A common practice in one form or another with Pagans of any path. Divination may reveal past events, present events in distant or hidden locations, or likely future events; it can also reveal insights within a seeker's own subconscious mind.

**Diviner** One who does divination.

**Dowsing** A divination method using a pendulum or stick to answer questions similar to the popular "Ouija" board. Some forms of this include water finding where a dowser uses a forked stick or the like to find water underground.

**Drawing down the moon** Used primarily during an esbat to draw down the powers of the moon into a female witch. Very powerful when a sabbat and esbat conjunct.

**Drawing down the sun** Used to draw down the powers of the sun into a male witch. Very powerful on the Equinoxes and Solstices.

**Earth** One of the main "elements" in occultism; associated in the West with matter, brown, black, pentacles, passivity, inertness, silence, food fertility, wealth, practicality, cold, dryness, etc.

**Earth-Mother** Female personification of the Life force, fertility of the Earth and its inhabitants. One of the most widespread deity concepts in the world (though far from universal); She is now worshiped in the West as Mother Nature.

**Element** The primary elements are earth, air, fire, water and spirit. Each of these 5 represents a point on the pentagram. The elements and their directions are extremely important in Pagan ritual.

**Esbat** (Es-bat) From the French word, esbattre, meaning to frolic, the esbat is the powerful ritual time of the full moon. There are 13 esbats in a year, all known by moon names.

**Evocation** The act of summoning the presence of spirits, deities or elementals to your sacred space.

**Familiar** Most commonly an animal, a familiar is a witch's working helper. Often advantageous to ritual, they can also become a liability and much thought should be given to taking a familiar.

**Family** A group of people who love and support each other, in good times and bad. Many Pagans find themselves abandoned by their birth families, so they create new families. Sometimes a coven or other spiritual groups can serve as a kind of family. Pagans respect all different kinds of family – nuclear families, extended families, single-parent families, Gay families, and much more.

**Fire** One of the main “elements” in occultism; associated in the West with flames, red, orange, wands or staves, activity, light, will, animals, energy, assertiveness, heat, dryness, etc.

**Gaian:** One who believes in focusing their spirituality on the Earth (Gaia.) May include some Pagans, Wiccans, Creation-Centred Christians, Scientific Pantheists and others.

**God** The aspect of a masculine deity.

**Goddess** The aspect of a feminine deity.

**Graphology** (1) An officially nonpsychic method of personality assessment based upon the study of handwriting samples. (2) A method of divination based upon the use of such samples as contagion links.

**Grimoires** So-called “Black Books” of (usually Goetic) magick, consisting of recipe collections, scrapbooks of magickal customs.

**Handfasting** A Pagan or Wiccan marriage ceremony which traditionally takes place at a specified period of time depending on one's tradition. A traditional Pagan betrothal lasts for a year and a day, after which the permanent ceremony is held. In most traditions, a High Priest or High Priestess officiates, reading the lines to the celebrants just like in a Christian wedding. The "handfasting" part refers to the custom of tying the celebrants' hands together with a ribbon to symbolize their union. Most Pagan religions allow the marriage of any persons who choose to form a family, so you may see two brides or two grooms or two brides and a groom or some other combination instead of the usual bride and groom.

**Handparting** a Pagan divorce, in honour of the fact that sometimes people do grow apart over time.

**Heathen:** Members of several Germanic and Norse traditions, such as Asatru and Odinism, prefer this term to the more general "Pagan."

**Herbalism** The magickal and medicinal art of using herbs for the practitioner's use or benefit.

**Iatromancy** The divination of medical problems and solutions.

**Imbolc** (Im-Bolc) Observed on February 2nd, Imbolc is the early spring sabbat which honours the virgin goddess as the young bride of the returning sun god. Reflection on the power of the gods from which physical and spiritual harvest will come.

**Incantation** Words used in a ritual or spell, should always be chanted or sung.

**Initiation** The transformation of one's ideals and values into the ideals and values of a particular path. Please note one can be in dedication but is not yet initiated whilst an initiated is always in dedication.  
**Invocation** The drawing of an aspect of a deity into one's self using magickal ritual.

**Karma** Karma follows the law of cause and effect. It is the belief that what one's actions do in this life, will carry over to the next life and lives to come.

**Law of Magick** A statement of the ways magickal phenomena seem to work.

**Libation** Drink or sometimes food, given to a deity, or spirit during magickal ritual.

**Litany** Long prayer or incantation with constantly repeating refrain.

**Litha** (Lith-ah) Also known as Midsummer, Litha is the summer solstice which honours the sun god at his peak power.

**Lodges** Groups of magickal and mystical workers similar to (1) the old European guild systems, with apprentices, journeypeople and masters, or (2) church organizations with rank based upon goodness or evilness. In America at least, these are usually tiny, incompetent and riddled with internal and external warfare and politics.

**Lughnassadh** (Loo-nuh-sa) The Pagan first harvest, or harvest of corn. Lughnassadh usually falls on August 1st. It is the first of the harvests. The Christian name of Lammas is sometimes used.

**Mabon** (May-bun) The Pagan Thanksgiving, or second harvest. Mabon falls on the autumnal equinox, when the light of the year shifts toward darkness. It is a traditional time for feasting. Day and night are of equal length. A harvest festival time.

**Mage** A general term for anyone doing magick, especially of the active kinds; often used as synonym for "magus."

**Magick** "Magick is the science and art of causing change to occur in conformity to will" Aleister Crowley

**Magister** Master, teacher or magician.

**Midsummer** Wicca/neo pagan observance of the bounty of nature. Fires are lit in honour of the Sun.

**Mundane:** Not magickal, not Pagan; mainstream. Some people use this simply to distinguish between different aspects of their lives, as in, "My craft name is Shadow; my mundane name is Sarah Smith." This can make a handy warning: "Please don't freak out my mundane relatives by talking about Samhain." Other people use the word to imply narrow-minded, dull, or hostile to matters magickal: "Rhiannon had to move because her landlord was a mundane; he kept complaining about the coven meeting at her place." In this form, it is synonymous with the term "Muggle" popularized by author J.K. Rowling.

**Mundanely Known As** Refers to a person's formal, check-cashing name rather than a craft name or nickname. Because some people use their legal name *only* for cashing checks, Pagans often know each other primarily or solely by craft name. This also offers protection in less-tolerant areas, a holdover from times when craft names made it impossible to anyone to betray covenmates if captured and tortured.

**Neo-Pagan** Applies to the various movements incepted since the 1950's, when the British anti-witchcraft laws were finally repealed.  
**Numerology** Divination by means of numbers and numerical "values" of letters.

**Occult:** Related to metaphysics, "occult" means "secret" and refers to hidden knowledge, such as the study of magick. "Esoteric" is a synonym.  
**Ostara** (Oh-star-ah) Welcoming of spring and the goddess-as-maiden. Observed at the vernal equinox, Ostara represents life and balance.

**Pagan** (Pay-gun) One who follows or practices an earth-based or nature religion.

**Pagan Rede** Summed up as "An ye harm none, do what thou will".

**Palmistry** Divination by means of the folds and other features of the hands.

**Pendulum** A divination device consisting of a string attached to a heavy object such as a crystal or the like. Questions are divined by noting the motion of the pendulum during divination.

**Pentacle** A pentagram surrounded by a circle and fashioned usually into a pendant. The pentacle is used in some covens to represent the element of earth.

**Pentagram** Always seen with the apex (point) upwards, the pentagram is the five pointed star symbolizing western Paganism. It represents the elements of earth, air, fire, water and spirit and also creative principle over all creation.

**Polytheism** The belief in the existence of multiple deities or godheads, as opposed to monotheism, where only a single god or godhead is revered.

**Reincarnation** The belief that we all return, after death, to the earth in the form of another human body. A result of a major Pagan principle that energy never dies.

**Ritual** Any ordered sequence of events, actions and/or directed thoughts, especially one that is repeated in the "same" manner each time, that is designed to produce a predictable altered state of consciousness within which certain magickal or religious results may be obtained.

**Runes** Letters in the old Celtic, Teutonic and Scandinavian alphabets; the word is based on roots meaning "secret" or "occult." Runes are a set of symbols used similarly to tarot, although they can be used in a much broader spectrum of divination.

**Sabbat** (Sabb-at) One of the days of Power. These are comprised of the eight solar festivals that celebrate the wheel of the year.

**Samhain** (Sow-in) October 31, is the grand sabbat marking the beginning of winter and the Celtic new year. It is also a time strongly believed where the veil between the living and the dead is at its thinnest. Wicca celebration of endings and beginnings and of remembering the dead. Revering of elders is also observed.

**Scrying** A form of divination using mirror and bowls where the user "sees" images, pictures of thoughts themselves.

**Sidhe** (Shee) The name generally applied to all the faery races of Ireland and Scotland.

**Skyclad** Nudity in ritual is said to be done "skyclad".

**Solitary** The practicing lone witch who worships without a coven.

**So Mote It Be:** The Wiccan version of "amen," said at the end of a prayer or spell. "So mote it be" means "It must happen this way" and serves to manifest what the speaker has just said. Wiccans also use this phrase to indicate agreement with something another person says. Like other useful phrases, it has spread far beyond the Wiccan tradition.

**Spell** A specific ritual designed to change one condition or thing. Also known as spinning, weaving, casting and spellcraft.

**Talisman** An object empowered to protect its wearer. Note this differs from the amulet as it is empowered, not naturally protective as is the amulet.

**Tarot** (Tair-oh) Divination using a set of 78 tarot cards which are laid out in such a fashion that the diviner interprets them to answer the question at hand.

**Triple Goddess** The 3 aspects of the mother goddess in one, maiden, mother and crone. A symbol widely found throughout the civilized world. The representation of the triple goddess is the waxing, full and waning moon. )O(

**Unity, Law of** "Every phenomenon in existence at any point in space or time is linked, directly or indirectly, to every other one."

**Wand** A short stick of wood or metal, used ritually in western occultism as a symbol (usually) of the "element" of Fire, as well as for concentrating and directing energies.

**Warlock** (1) One who bends (or bends with) words, a magician and/or liar. (2) Used by some to refer to male witches.

**Water** One of the main "elements" in occultism; associated in the West with emotions, intuition, blue, green, silver, cups, bowls, wisdom, passivity, cleansing, passive psychic arts, cold, dampness, etc.

**Wheel of the Year** The never ending seasonal shift throughout the 8 sabbats or days of power. In Pagan mythos, the goddess turns the wheel bringing everything to season.

**Wic** An Old English root meaning (1) to bend, turn or twist, and (2) to practice magick. No significant connection to "wisdom."

**Wicca** (Wik-uh) Wicca represents an ancient religion of love for life and nature. Wicca is easily one of the most irrepressible religions in the world because it stimulates the intellect, promotes a simple, practical way of life and, most importantly, is emotionally satisfying. Brought into the public eye in the 1950's by Gerald Gardner after the repeal of British anti-witchcraft laws, Wicca is now a strong, healthy and popular religion and movement.

**Wiccaning** Also called "Paganing" or "saining," this is the Wiccan/Pagan equivalent of christening. During this rite, a Pagan baby receives a name and welcoming into the family/tribe. Customarily, the parents and/or a High Priestess also bless the child and introduce him or her to the God and the Goddess, but not as a permanent dedication. That must wait until the child is old enough to decide what religion he or she feels called to follow. This merely serves as a basis for teaching, protection, and community during childhood.



**Widdershins** (Widd-er-shins) The working act usually in ritual or song of moving or dancing in a counter-clockwise motion. This is used for banishing or negative works. This is the opposite of deosil.

**Witch** A general word for Pagans worldwide although traditionally those of Anglo-Celtic, Celtic or Teutonic traditions.

**Witch Wars** The regrettable use of vicious gossip and backbiting which sometimes surrounds a dispute within Pagan culture; not restricted to Witches. The term "witch war" can refer to online flames, letter campaigns, fights in person, and so forth. Responsible people do not support or practice this kind of behaviour.

**Wizard** From the Old English "wys-ard," meaning "wise one." Originally may have referred to anyone whose wisdom was respected; later came to mean a male witch; now used to mean a powerful and wise magician.

**Yule** (Yool) The winter solstice and the shortest day of the year, Yule is when the goddess gives birth to the god. This is also the Norse New Year.

## A GLOSSARY OF TERMS USED IN THE PHILOSOPHY OF RELIGION

**A priori** A statement is a priori if it is knowable without any reference to any experience we may have had. The statement "all bachelors are men," is a priori because we do not need to establish that they are all men by proving it because of the nature of the word "bachelor".

**Analytic statement** A classic term used by Kant meaning a statement that is true by definition. A statement is analytically true if the clauses or predicates within the statement say something necessarily true of all instances of the subject. e.g. all spinsters are women. It is not possible to be a spinster if one is not a woman.

**Atheism** The belief that God does not exist. Philosophers who were atheists include Karl Marx, Friedrich Nietzsche, Bertrand Russell, and Jean-Paul Sartre.

**Belief** A belief is an opinion or supposition. It can mean "know" (I believe  $2+2=4$ ), or "think" (I believe you are telling the truth) but is more usually associated with religious doctrines or dogmas and sometimes philosophical and ethical positions.

**Belief System** A combination of the following: A fixed coherent set of beliefs, usually religious, which form a pattern of religious opinions and rules; ritual and habitual behaviour; group or community organizations and structures (hierarchy, leadership, buildings etc); with a basis in key texts such as the Bible for Jews and Christians and the Koran for Muslims. There is usually a sense of the other, the supernatural or the ultimate in these systems although not always. Secular belief systems such as humanism and communism do not have this transcendental aspect. See also Value system, World View.

**Cartesian Doubt** To act in a way which assumes none of the normal assumptions people live by to discover and assess the reasons for those assumptions.

**Compatibilism** The belief that it is possible to maintain both determinism and free will because while some aspects of our nature are determined, our ability to make moral decisions is not.

**Contingency Argument** Philosophical idea that everything in existence depends on something else for its existence, but that nothing has a reason for its existence contained within it.

**Cosmological** Name used to describe the argument for God's existence which posits that there must have been a First Cause of all things.

**Counter-Example** An example which undermines or refutes the principle or theory against which it is advanced.

**Deductive** A deductive argument is an argument whose conclusion follows necessarily from its premises. This contrasts to various kinds of inductive arguments, which offer only a degree of probability to support their conclusion. Referring to the method of reasoning in which one starts out with

premises that are known or assumed to be true, and logically derives some consequences from such premises. This is the method proposed by Aristotle with his famous syllogisms (e.g., All men are mortal {first premise}; Socrates is a man {second premise}; therefore Socrates is mortal {conclusion}). Notice that, contrary to popular belief, the type of reasoning used by the fictional character of Sherlock Holmes was *not* deduction, but a form of induction known as "induction to the best inference."

**Deism** The belief that God does exist, but he only created the universe and has not intervened in its affairs ever since. A belief, that was common among Enlightenment thinkers, which accepts the idea of a god as creator of the universe but rejects the concept of a personal god who intervenes in the affairs of humans.

**Deist** Somebody who believes that God created the universe and its laws but then refrained from any further direct intervention in his creation.

**Determinism** See hard Determinism, Compatibilism/Soft Determinism and Libertarianism and Free will.

**Dualism** The concept of human life as separated into distinct entities of body and soul or mind and body; the idea that reality is divided into two categories: that which is natural and material, and that which is supernatural and mystical.

**Empirical** That which is observable by experiment, not accepted as simply a theory; verifiable by means of observation or experiment.

**Empiricism** The theory that truth is verified by testable sense experience. In Ethics it is linked to Naturalism where moral truths can be scientifically proven.

**Enlightenment.** The intellectual movement in modern Europe from the sixteenth until the eighteenth centuries that maintained that human reason could understand the world and guide all human conduct. Also known as "the Age of Reason" — marked by the rise of science and the application of reason, instead of religion or superstition, to all areas of human inquiry and society.

**Epicureanism** A humanist school of thought founded by Epicurus (ca. 341 – 271 BCE) which emphasized pleasure, moderation, and intellectual achievement and grew to be widespread in the ancient Greek and Roman world.

**Epistemology** The branch of philosophy that studies the nature of knowledge.

**Existential** Philosophical issues dealing with the nature and meaning of human existence.

**Fate/Fatalism** Fate is the concept that there is a force or law influencing or controlling human affairs. A religious variant of Determinism.

**Fideism** The idea that God can only be known through faith, and not through rational inquiry.

**Freedom/ Free Will** Freedom a pre-necessity of moral responsibility. You must arguably be free to act to be morally responsible for your actions. Libertarians hold that we are free to act morally.

**Hard Determinism** The belief that people do not have free will to act in moral situations, that all moral actions have uncontrollable prior causes.

Determinism has the difficulty that if people are not free to act morally then it seems unreasonable to hold them responsible for their actions.

**Hume's dictum** The idea that highly unusual hypotheses should be backed up by a large amount of evidence. Carl Sagan summarized it as, "Extraordinary claims require extraordinary evidence."

**Hypothesis** A human mental construct that is used to provide a reasonable, preliminary, causal explanation of a set of facts.

**Hypothetical constructs** Agents or factors that are guessed to cause one or more aspects of human cognition (thinking), affect (feelings/emotion), or behaviour.

**Idea/ Form** Plato absolutes which he thought were the real things in the universe and were immortal and beyond our senses. For Plato the good life involved the pursuit of these Ideas or Form, using philosophical enquiry. By pursuing them we would eventually perceive goodness itself, the supreme Idea.

**Inductive** Referring to the method of reasoning in which one starts with a series of observations and generalizes them to make predictions about as yet unobserved cases. Although induction is the basis of all science, it can yield mistaken conclusions: one could be too hasty in generalizing from an apparent pattern and make unfounded predictions. This is a fundamental reason why scientific conclusions are always tentative.

**Law of Parsimony** Synonym with Occam's Razor When two or more explanations (theories) account equally well for the same results, the simpler one (the one requiring the fewest causal agents) is best.

**Logic.** The study or argument and reasoning. The study of whether certain conclusions follow from their premises and if so why.

**Logical fallacy** An error in logical thinking as defined by the study of logic or philosophical practice. It consists in drawing a conclusion from certain premises in a way that is unwarranted by the laws of logic.

**Logical Positivism.** The view that the only real things are those which are either empirically provable (we can test them) or logically necessary ( $1+1=2$ ). All religious, superstitious and supernatural statements are meaningless. This philosophy was propagated by a group called the Vienna Circle and later came to be associated with A J Ayer and Emotivism.

**Materialism** In philosophy, the theory that physical matter is the only reality and that everything can be explained in terms of physical phenomena.

**Metaphysical** That which is beyond the physical and empirical.

**Metaphysics** The branch of philosophy that is concerned with what is beyond physics and therefore beyond any empirical evidence.

**Methodology** A system of procedures and rules used in an area of study; the branch of philosophy dealing with the principles and procedures of inquiry.

**Monism** The concept of human life as an integrated whole, without division into body and soul; the idea that everything in the universe is part of the natural realm and therefore subject to natural laws; i.e., that there is no supernatural realm.

**Naturalism** 1. In philosophy and metaphysics, the system of thought holding that nature is the only reality and that all phenomena can be explained in

terms of natural causes and laws. 2. In ethics, the category of moral theories which assert that morality can be derived from, or defined in terms of, natural or empirical phenomena.

**Naturalistic** Devoid of belief in anything supernatural.

**Nihilism.** The belief that there is no value or truth, a belief in nothing (*nihil*).

**Non-empirical constructs** synonym with NECs Hypothetical constructs or hypothesized causal agents that have no real, tangible, observable, measurable, testable existence or identity.

**Occam's razor** Expression referring to the principle articulated by fourteenth-century English philosopher William Occam, who said that when given a choice of explanations, the one containing the fewest possible assertions is the best; a philosophical principle according to which one should not make more assumptions than are necessary to explain the facts at hand. When two or more explanations (theories) account equally well for the same results, the simpler one (the one requiring the fewest causal agents) is best.

**Ontological** Name used to describe the argument for God's existence which posits that there must be some kind of being that is greater than anything we can imagine, and that this being is God.

**Panentheism** The belief that the divine is in all things and all things are in the divine, but the divine is greater than all things.

**Philosophers** The leading philosophical, political, and social writers of the 18th-century French Enlightenment.

**Post-modernism** Synonym with deconstructionism The idea that all knowledge is relative, that different cultural traditions are equivalent, and that, therefore, science should not enjoy any privileged status as a particularly effective method of inquiry.

**Rationalism.** A theory popular in the 17th and 18th which holds that it is possible to determine what truly exists by reason alone, and that all things are explicable using reason. In more recent times it is associated with the rejection of religious beliefs, faith or any belief system considered irrational. See also Logical Positivism

**Renaissance** The period in European history, beginning in the fourteenth century and continuing through to the early seventeenth century, which was marked by a rebirth of learning.

**Revelation** Messages believed to come directly from God; the act of direct communication between God and humans.

**Self evident truth** A truth which requires no external proof or justification.

**Scepticism** The ancient Greek skeptics were dedicated to the investigation of concrete experience and wary of theories that might cloud or confuse that experience. Conversely, modern skeptics are wary of the reliability of sense experience.

**Syllogism** A form of deductive reasoning using the key terms "all" and "some". For example, "all citizens of the EU are humans but only some humans are citizens of the EU."

**Teleological** Name used to describe the argument for God's existence which posits that the world is characterized by such a degree of planning that there must have been a supreme designer.

**Telos** Greek word representing Aristotle's idea that living beings have an innate natural tendency toward a particular end. It is not clear to what extent Aristotle meant this to be a property put in place by a supernatural entity as opposed to being a natural characteristic of life.

**Theism** Belief in one or more personal gods or goddesses.

**Theist** Person who believes in one or more personal gods or goddesses.

**Theists** People who believe in one or more personal gods or goddesses, people who believe in God.

**Theology** The study of theistic religion.

**Transcendent** Above and independent of the material universe.

**World View** A collective term from all systems of belief be they religious (Christian Hindu etc.), or secular (communist, humanist, vegetarianism). Usually world views have accompanying **value systems**.

## RASTAFARIAN GLOSSARY



**Accompong** Name of Maroon warrior, Capt. Accompong, brother of Cudjo; also name of town. From the Twi name for the supreme deity

**Amharic** One of the many languages of Ethiopia; the language of the royal Ethiopian dynasty since the 13th century.

**Armageddon** The biblical final battle between the forces of good and evil

**Autobiography of Malcolm X, The** The Autobiography of Malcolm X, published in 1965 shortly after Malcolm X's assassination, is perhaps the most compelling work to come out of the civil rights movement of the 1960s in the United States. It is Malcolm X's account, as recorded by Alex Haley of his life from his impoverished youth in a northern black ghetto through numerous imprisonments to his emergence as a power in the Black Muslims and his breach with that organization. Although he lashes out against whites and their power structure, Malcolm X does hold out the slim hope of reconciliation between the races in a new society based on social justice. His career ended abruptly when he was shot and killed in New York City on Feb. 21, 1965, by assassins thought to be connected with the Black Muslims. The Autobiography of Malcolm X (dictated to Alex Haley, 1965) publicized Malcolm's ideas and became something of a classic in contemporary American literature.

**Babylon** The corrupt establishment, the "system, " Church and State; the police, a policeman From a Rastafari perspective, Babylon is the historically white-European colonial and imperialist power structure which has oppressed Blacks and other peoples of colour.

**Bait** Punk BAD MAN = gangsta.

**Babylon** Feds = police.

**Badness** Hooligan behaviour, violence for its own sake.

**Bakra** White slave master or member of the ruling class in colonial days. Popular etymology: "back raw" (which he bestowed with a whip.)

**Bald-Head** A straight person; one without dreadlocks; one who works for Babylon

**Balmyard** Place where pocpmania rites are held, healing is done, spells cast or lifted

**Banton** A storyteller.

**Bobo Shanti** A separatist order who adhere to Old Testament law. The Nyahbinghi Order (the oldest sect, named for Queen Nyahbinghi of Uganda), and Twelve Tribes, who believe themselves descendents of the twelve tribes of David.

**Braa** From Bredda; brother.

**Bredren** One's fellow male Rastas

**Chalice or Chillum** A pipe for smoking herb, usually made from coconut shell or CHALEWA: and tubing, used ritually by Rastas.

**Craven** Greedy

**Creation Stepper** Means you step it in and throughout Babylon without fear - cuttin' edge, livin' on the edge, fear no foe.

**Creole** Language that began as a pidgin but has become the native language of a community. Creoles and pidgins develop as a means of communication between members of two mutually unintelligible language communities. Rasta Talk was initially intended to be a secret language to counter societal oppression. The language was intended to be secret. This particular intention was, however, short-lived: the language of Rasta soon moved into the youth culture of Jamaica." JC and other creoles have themselves functioned as languages of secrecy. The linguistic modifications of Rasta Talk are both numerous and dynamic. Linguistic modification is seen as a necessity by Rastafarians because JC is a product of colonialism and because JC is viewed as an inadequate vehicle for their religion. Rasta Talk has four types of linguistic innovations: 1) Redefinitions of existing words 2) merging of existing words into new words 3) Substitution of "I" for the initial syllable of words (these are inherently benedictive) 4) Substitution of meaning for existing JC words.

**Crosses** Problems, vexations, trials; bad luck, misfortunes.

**Cubbitch** Covetous

**Cudjo** Name of famous Maroon warrior; mn born on Monday, from Fante, Twi kudwo.

**Cutchie** Pipe for communal smoking.

**Culture** Reflecting or pertaining to the roots values and traditions highly respected by the Rastas

**Diaspora** Dispersion; a migration; the dispersion of an originally homogeneous people.

**Dinki** A kind of traditional dance at funerals or "nine nights" ("set-ups"); now popular among school children.

**Downpressor** Preferred term for oppressor

**Dread** 1. a person with dreadlocks; 2. a serious idea or thing; 3. a dangerous situation or person; 4. the "dreadful power of the holy"; 5. experientially, "awesome, fearful confrontation of a people with a primordial but historically denied racial selfhood"

**Dreadlocks** 1. hair that is neither combed nor cut; 2. a person with dreadlocks; a natural hairstyle in which the hair is twisted into long matted or rope like locks.

**Dreadtalk/Rasta Talk** The language of the Rastafarians is known as Rasta Talk or Dread Talk by non-Rastafarians, and as Iyaric ("I" + "Amharic") or Livalect ("live" + "dialect") by Rastafarians. In Jamaica, it exists as one of a number of registers of JC that indicate social standing and/or situation. Rasta Talk was initiated by the sect known as the Youth Black Faith, founded in 1949. Nearly all Jamaicans speak or at least understand several registers of JC Rasta Talk is not spoken by non-Rastafarians, but many words from Rasta Talk have entered other registers in JC; this is mainly due to the international popularity of reggae music and its linkage with Rastafarianism. Rastafarians had little or no influence upon JC prior to the 1960s.

**Dready** A friendly term for a fellow dread

**Duppy** A ghost.



**Ease-Up** To forgive, to lighten up.

**Elders** The term given to individuals of longstanding commitment in the Rasta Movement. In everyday speech, the status of male individuals as elders is often acknowledged by use of the term "Bongo" as an honorific (e.g., addressing someone as "Bongo Hill" or "Bongo Ketu").

**Ganja** Herb, marijuana.

**Garvey, Marcus** b. Jamaica, Aug. 17, 1887, d. June 10, 1940, organized the black nationalist movement of the 1920s in the United States. Garvey went to New York City in 1916 and recruited followers for his Universal Negro Improvement Association. Its program was to unite all black peoples through the establishment in Africa of a country and government of their own. Garvey was a magnetic speaker who dressed in a resplendent uniform and led his followers in parades through Harlem. In 1921 he claimed nearly 1 million followers. Garvey's newspaper, Negro World, carried his views to all parts of the United States. He preached economic independence, pride of race, and the need for black Americans to return to Africa. Garvey organized a steamship company, the Black Star Line, to provide a commercial link among all the black peoples of the world. His methods of selling stock in the line, however, led to his conviction (1923) for using the U.S. mails to defraud. After serving nearly 3 years of a 5-year sentence, he was pardoned by President Coolidge and deported to Jamaica in 1927. Although he died in obscurity, Garvey is remembered as a national hero in his native Jamaica.

**Gorgon** Outstanding dreadlocks

**(Don) Gorgon** Outstanding dreadlocks, a person who is respected

**Grounation** Large, island-wide meeting and celebration of Rastas

**Herb** Marijuana.

**I** Replaces "me", "you", "my"; replaces the first syllable of selected words I and I, I&I: I, me, you and me, we Rastafari speech eliminates you, me we, they, etc., as divisive and replaces same with communal I and I. I and I embraces the congregation in unity with the Most I (high) in an endless circle of inity (unity).

**I-Cense** Rasta word for Ganja, from the Biblical word "Incense"

**I-Ditate** Rasta word for "Meditate"

**I-Dren** Male Rastafarian

**I-Man** I, me, mine

**I-Ney** A greeting

**Irie** A Greeting. excellent, cool, highest, adj. powerful and pleasing.

**Ises/lzes/Isis** Praises to the almighty given by Rasta, when calling on the name of Jah for strength and assistance for achieving progress in life.

**Isms and Skisms** Negative term denoting Babylon's classificatory systems

**I-Tal** Vital, organic, natural, wholesome; refers to way of cooking and way of life in colours, red, green and gold

**Jah Guide** A Rasta farewell and good-bye. Literally says that "God shall guide."

**Jah Know** Lord knows

**Jah** God; possibly derived as a shortened form of Jahweh or Jehovah Jah Ras Tafari, Haile Selassie, King of Kings, Lord of Lords, conquering Lion of Judah; rastas revere Haile Selassie as the personification of the Almighty

**Jamican Creole** (JC) is an English-based creole that is a product of colonialism. The Spaniards were the first to colonize Jamaica, but had little direct influence upon development of JC. When British colonialists ousted them, the Spaniards' African slaves escaped into the mountains where they retained much of their African culture and some of their African languages. The British brought more slaves from Africa, but were unable to recapture the escapees, known as Maroons, and so instead maintained a negotiated peace settlement with them. The Maroons reinforced the African influences in JC that the African slaves of the British brought. Maroons also influenced (though not always directly) various Afrocentric political and religious movements, including the Rastafarians. Maroon retention of African culture has generally been seen as positive by these movements despite the Maroons' agreement with the British to return all newly escaped slaves. Other aspects of the Caribbean milieu (e.g., French, Portuguese, Spanish, Dutch, Hindi and Amerindian languages) have also influenced JC.

**Jamdung** Jamaica, "Jam" to press down "dung" down. Ironic reference to social and economic conditions of the masses

**Jon Connu** (John Canoe). Bands of elaborately masked dancers appearing around Christmas. They resemble the ancestral dancers of West Africa, but the etymology of the word is unclear.

**Kouchie** Bowl of a chalice or chillum pipe

**Kumina** Ecstatic dance for the purpose of communicating with ancestors. From Twi *akom-to* to be possessed and *ana-by* an ancestor From Twi *akom-to* to be possessed and *ana-by* an ancestor

**Lion** A righteous Dread; a great soul

**Malcolm X** b. May 19, 1925, d. Feb. 21, 1965. Was an influential American advocate of Black Nationalism, and - as a pioneer in articulating a vigorous self-defence against white violence a precursor of the black power movement of the late 1960s. Born Malcolm Little in Omaha, Neb., he became a rebellious youth after the death (1931) of his father, who the family believed was murdered for advocating the ideas of Marcus Garvey. Malcolm spent a few years in a foster home but became an excellent student. At the age of 16, he moved east with relatives and drifted to New York City, where he became involved in Harlem's underworld of drugs, prostitution, and confidence games. In prison for burglary from 1946 to 1952, he read widely and was converted to the teachings of Elijah Muhammad. On his release, he embraced the Black Muslim movement and changed his name to Malcolm X. Following his initial training, Malcolm became the leading spokesman for the Black Muslims to the outside world. An ideological split developed between Malcolm and the more conservative Elijah Muhammad, and in 1963 Malcolm was suspended as a minister of the Black Muslims. After a pilgrimage to Mecca, he announced (1964) that he had become an orthodox Muslim and founded the rival Organization for Afro-American Unity. His travel in the Middle East and Africa gave him a more optimistic view regarding potential brotherhood between

black and white Americans; he no longer preached racial separation, but rather a socialist revolution.

**Marley, Bob** Singer-songwriter-guitarist Bob Marley, b. Robert Nesta Marley in St. Ann, Jamaica, Feb. 6, 1945, d. May 11, 1981, took Reggae out of Jamaica and disseminated it to the world. In 1964, Marley formed his vocal group the Wailers (then the Wailin' Wailers or the Wailin' Rudeboys), which included Peter Tosh and Bunny Livingston, both of whom went on to enjoy solo careers. By 1972 the group had recorded four Jamaican albums. In 1967, Marley converted to the Rastafarian religion, which became a dominant theme in his music. Marley became a songwriter for Johnny Nash in 1972, giving him the first reggae-flavoured international hit with "Stir It Up." Bob Marley and the Wailers' critically acclaimed American debut album *Catch a Fire*, and its follow up, *Burnin'* (which contained the subsequent hits "Get Up, Stand Up" and "I Shot the Sheriff"--popularized by Eric Clapton), were both released in 1973. Later albums, including *Natty Dread* (1975), *Rastaman Vibration* (1976), and *Uprising* (1981), won Marley international audiences. His work influenced countless reggae and pop artists in the United States and Britain, where reggae remains especially popular.

**Maroon** Free black warrior-communities which successfully resisted British hegemony during eighteenth century and early nineteenth century. From Spanish cimmaron- untamed, wild

**Menelik, Ras** Ethiopian nobleman who rallied his troops to resist Italian aggression. Defeated Italians at Adowa 1896

**Myal** A form of benign magic opposed to Obeah, hence myalman. From Hursa maye-wizard, person of mystic power.

**Natty Congo** 1. dreadlocks 2. a person with dreadlocks

**Nazarite** Ancient Hebrew meaning to "separate", consecrated, set apart by choice and devotion

**Niyabinghi** 1. "death to all black and white oppressors", 2. East African warriors who resisted colonial domination, 3. large Rastafarian meeting and spiritual gathering, 4. referring to orthodox, traditional Rastas, 5. a variety of drumming. This term has a series of overlapping meanings within the contemporary Rastafari Movement. It refers variously to the island-wide religious gatherings of Rasta brethren and sistren to the three-part drum ensemble on which chants are composed, to the African-derived dance-drumming style performed at these events, and to the corpus of chants themselves. It also refers to the most orthodox organization within the broader Rasta movement variously known as the House of Nyabinghi or the Theocratic Government of Emperor Haile Selassie I.

**Obeah** Traditional African "science", relating to matters of the spirit and spirits, spells, divinations, omens, extra-sensory knowledge, etc.

**Oral tradition** Oral Tradition or Word of Mouth, refers to preservation of personal and cultural history in the oral communication of stories, songs, and poems. By retelling or re-enacting a tale learned from another, it is kept alive for a new generation.

**Payaka** Heathen

**Planno, Mortimer** In 1939, as an early convert to Rastafari, Planno had moved to Trench Town. Born in Kingston in 1920, he was one of the founder members of Kingston's first Rastafarian encampment in the Dungle. His devout studies of all matters connected with the faith, combined with his brilliant intellect, established Planner, or 'Planno', as he simply became known, as one of the elders of Rastafari. Marley and Planno met up in Trench Town, the Rastafarian elder instructing Bob on the arcane truths of the religion. Later, Planno would be Bob's manager, coordinating their careers, arranging studio sessions, etc.

**Pocomania, Poco** Christian revival, distinct drum rhythm

**Polytricks** Politics

**Polytricksters** Politicians

**Rahtid** Expression of surprise, or to be enraged. From biblical "wrothed".

**Rasta, Rastafarian** A follower of Marcus Garvey who worships the Almighty in the person of Haile Selassie

**Red** The colour red is of great significance in dub poetry. "Being 'red' in Rastafarian "dreadtalk" denotes the effects of ganja (marijuana) or simple anger. (...) It also suggests the fire heating up a boiler which is "ready fi explode." In Jamaica, "eart tun red" has another association connected with the red-coloured bauxite deposits

**Red Eye** To want another persons belonging, envious. "You too red eye",

**Reggae** A Jamaican musical style based on American soul music but with inverted rhythms and prominent bass lines. Reggae marked a general move in Jamaican culture and society away from the folklore-inspired country culture in the direction of an urban ghetto culture, incorporating traditional African formats (as had mento, ska, blue beat and rocksteady in their time) but fusing or syncretising them with contemporary urban techniques and technology. The nascence of reggae involved the transportation of more pronounced forms of African culture into the cities. Rooted in Kingston's slums, reggae is the expression of Jamaica's poorest blacks. Many performers are Rastafarians. The themes of reggae lyrics include Rastafarianism, political protest, and the "rudie" (hooligan hero). Bob Marley (1945-81) and his group, the Wailers, were largely responsible for the widespread popularity of reggae. The film *The Harder They Come* (1973) brought the style to the United States. Reggae influenced a generation of white musicians--notably, Paul Simon ("Mother and Child Reunion," 1972) and Eric Clapton ("I Shot the Sheriff," 1974 - and reggae modes can often be detected in 1980s rock music.

**Rodney, Walter** Was a political activist from Guyana who worked in Jamaica in the 60s. When he returned to his native land he was an opponent of the dictator, Burnham. Rodney was assassinated in 1980.

**Roots** 1. derived from the experience of the common people, natural indigenous; 2. a greeting; 3. name for a fellow Rasta

**Ryal** royal.

**Sankey** Religious song of a particularly lugubrious tone, sung in the long or common meter. From Ira David Sankey, evangelist and hymnalist

**Sata** To rejoice, to meditate, to give thanks and praise.

**Satta** Sit, rest, meditate, relax

**(Go) Satta** Claim how spiritual you are

**Science** Obeah, witchcraft

**Scientist** Occult practitioner

**Shepherd** Leader of revivalist cult; also proprietor of balmyard, healer and prophet.

**Sister, Sistren** A woman, a friend, woman Rastafarians

**Structure** Body, health.

**Sufferer** A poor person struggling to survive

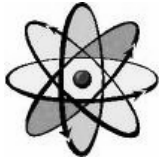
**Tam** Deep woollen hat, used by Dreads to cover their locks.

**Wolf** A non-rasta deadlocks

**Yaga Yaga** Dancehall slang. a way to big up a brethren; to express a greeting or attract attention, i.e. yo! or yush! true friend; bonafide; brethren.

**Zion** Ethiopia, Africa, the Rastafarian holy land Zion: From a Rasta perspective, Zion refers broadly to Africa and more specifically to Ethiopia as the ancestral homeland of all black peoples.

## A GLOSSARY OF TERMS USED IN THE SCIENCE AND RELIGION



**Affect** The emotions, both pleasant and unpleasant, that are naturally and functionally related to cognition and behaviours and to antecedents and consequences.

**Antecedents** Stimulus events that precede a behaviour, thought, or feeling and make it likely to occur.

**Anti-rationalism** A form of anti-intellectualism which holds that reason is cold and dull, and that sceptical inquiry threatens authority.

**Atomists** Followers of the school of thought in Classical Greece which argued that simple, minute, indivisible, and indestructible particles are the basic components of everything in the universe.

**Behaviour** Any observable action of an organism, including actions that can be observed only by using sophisticated technology such as brain imaging techniques.

**Behaviour modification** Intentionally using the natural principles of learning systematically to influence someone's learning, usually by trying to increase desirable behaviours and decrease undesirable ones.

**Bio behavioural information processing model** A psychological theoretical model that attributes all human thoughts, feelings, and behaviours to natural biological causes, and features a natural information processing model of human cognition (thoughts, ideas, memories, concepts, learning, etc.) in contrast with psychodynamic, behavioural, and other cognitive models of psychological theory.

**Cause and effect** The scientific means of answering all “why” questions about human thought, feelings, and behaviours by translating into testable hypotheses of scientific study to derive explanations and predictions which combine to yield understanding.

**Central nervous system** The brain and spinal cord.

**Chaos theory** A mathematical theory explaining how apparently complex and unpredictable behaviour can originate from relatively simple dynamics that can be described by a few short equations. It has applications especially in physics, but also in biology.

**Cognition** Any symbolic representation in the brain, such as a thought, memory, idea, intention, or sensory image.

**Cognitive restructuring** A dramatic change in perception or understanding, sometimes concerning the nature of the universe, life, or other fundamental questions.

**Comparative psychology** Researching human psychological phenomena by studying non-human animals and then generalizing the results back to our own species

**Complexity** A measure of the amount of information necessary to describe a given system or phenomenon. Notice that long sequences of random numbers are highly complex, so that complexity per se is not sufficient to

generate the patterns typical of biological structures.

**Complexity theory** A more general theory of complexity (compared to chaos), which studies the relationships between the number of parts making up a system (e.g., an airport, or a living organism) and the complexity of its behaviour.

**Conditioning** A relatively permanent change in behaviour (thinking/emotion) due to environmental experience; changing behaviour because of its consequences; one of the three natural determinants which programs and reprograms the psychological repertoire.

**Consequences** Stimulus events that follow a behaviour, thought, or feeling and determine its future occurrence in similar situations

**Consilience** A term indicating the process by which different lines of evidence converge toward the same answer to a given question. It is the best assurance that a scientific hypothesis is, in fact, correct.

**Corpus callosum** The connection between the left and right hemisphere of the brains in a normal human being.

**Cosmology** The study of the physical universe as a totality, including its origins and nature.

**Creationism** A belief that the universe was especially created from nothing by a supernatural being (there are many versions of creationism, depending on the religious beliefs of their proponents); religious belief claiming factual correctness of the Genesis account of Earth's creation by God in six days, and denying the slow evolution of species from one form to another; the belief in the literal truth of the biblical account of the origins of the universe, life, and humankind.

**Day-age theory** An interpretation of the Bible according to which each "day" referred to in the traditional six-day account of creation is comparable to a geological age, so it literally took tens of millions of years to create stars, planets, and life on Earth in convenient agreement with the evidence from astronomy and geology.

**Deductive** A method of reasoning in which one starts out with premises that are known or assumed to be true, and logically derives some consequences from such premises. This is the method proposed by Aristotle with his famous syllogisms (e.g., All men are mortal {first premise}; Socrates is a man {second premise}; therefore Socrates is mortal {conclusion}). Notice that, contrary to popular belief, the type of reasoning used by the fictional character of Sherlock Holmes was not deduction, but a form of induction known as "induction to the best inference."

**DNA** Abbreviation for Deoxy-ribo-Nucleic-Acid, the chemical compound that carries most of the genetic information in the living world. A similar molecule also used by living organisms is RNA, Ribo-Nucleic-Acid (DNA is just like RNA, but it lacks an oxygen group).

**Egocentrism** The idea that the Earth is at the centre of the universe, believed by most (though not all) ancient thinkers until Copernicus and Galileo provided decisive arguments and empirical evidence against it during the 16th and 17th centuries.

**Emergent properties** The characteristic of certain relatively simple systems (e.g., convection cells in the atmosphere) to generate complex patterns of behaviour. It is the subject of study of both chaos and complexity theories.

**Empirical** That which is observable by experiment, not accepted as simply a theory.

**Empirical constructs** Hypothetical constructs that are predicted to have real, tangible, observable, measurable, testable existence, once sufficient scientific research has been done; natural causal agents.

**Energy transduction** The translation of stimulus energy into neural impulse energy.

**Engram** One of the trillions of memory images in the human brain.

**Evolution** Technically, the natural process by which life changes and diversifies. The hallmark of an evolutionary process is that it causes changes in the frequencies of the genes in a population of living organisms.

**Fact** In science, an observation, or the result of an experimental manipulation.

**Gap theory** A conception of the geological record and the Bible according to which there is a large temporal gap between the first and second chapters of Genesis in the Hebrew Bible, suggesting the existence of a pre-Adamic Earth that was destroyed and replaced by a second creation, when God started over and (re?) made Adam and Eve.

**Genes** Inherited DNA and RNA codes that pre-program psychological instincts and potential capabilities and can predispose us to develop particular ways of thinking, feeling, and/or behaving/acting; one of three natural determinants.

**Genetic pre-programming** Our genes' abilities to give us our general capacities to think, feel, and act.

**God of the gaps** A process of assigning to God all mysteries that remains unsolved by rational inquiry. As human knowledge progresses and natural explanations are possible for aspects of existence that were once inexplicable and supernaturally explained, so the role of God diminishes or changes radically.

**Hume's dictum** The idea that highly unusual hypotheses should be backed up by a large amount of evidence. Carl Sagan summarized it as, "Extraordinary claims require extraordinary evidence."

**Hypothesis** A human mental construct that is used to provide a reasonable, preliminary, causal explanation of a set of facts.

**Hypothetical constructs** Agents or factors that are guessed to cause one or more aspects of human cognition (thinking), affect (feelings/emotion), or behaviour.

**ID** synonym with intelligent design A variant of creationism based on the idea that the existence of a supernatural deity is betrayed by the complexity (design-like) of the universe.

**Incremental complexity** The opposite idea to irreducible complexity that biological structures are indeed complex, but that this complexity is built gradually by natural selection in a fashion similar to a ratchet: even though



there is no plan, more complex structures evolve from simpler ones by accumulation of intermediate steps that are either advantageous or neutral to the organism's survival.

**Inductive** Referring to the method of reasoning in which one starts with a series of observations and generalizes them to make predictions about as yet unobserved cases. Although induction is the basis of all science, it can yield mistaken conclusions: one could be too hasty in generalising from an apparent pattern and make unfounded predictions. This is a fundamental reason why scientific conclusions are always tentative.

**Information processing** synonym with IP The way humans take in, interpret, understand, think about, and make and implement decisions about stimuli from our environments.

**Inhibition** Reducing an undesirable behaviour by presenting a nonreinforcing consequence (such as time out or response cost) to the subject.

**Instincts** Inherited, specific thoughts, feelings, and behaviours which occur automatically in response to particular internal or external stimuli.

**Intelligent design** synonym with ID A variant of creationism based on the idea that the existence of a supernatural deity is betrayed by the complexity (design-like) of the universe; a pseudo-scientific belief system holding that life is too complex to have evolved and therefore must have had a Creator. ID was adopted when less sophisticated attempts (such as creationism) to combat the dominance of evolution in the science classroom proved inadequate; the principle that certain ordered states in nature imply the existence of an independent designer; i.e. a supernatural being that establishes and controls 'natural law.'

**IP** synonym with information processing The way humans take in, interpret, understand, think about, and make and implement decisions about stimuli from our environments.

**Irreducible complexity** A term proposed by ID supporter Michael Behe to indicate the possibility that some biological structure could not have evolved because none of the intermediate steps would have been functional. Since only the full structure would work, it must have been designed by an intelligent agent. Biologists claim that no examples of irreducible complexity in the natural world have actually been found.

**Law** A general statement reflecting the expectation that certain patterns of events will always occur if and whenever certain conditions are met.

**Learning** synonym with conditioning A relatively permanent change in behaviour (thinking/emotion) due to environmental experience; changing behaviour because of its consequences; one of the three natural determinants which programs and reprograms the psychological repertoire.

**Life** A very difficult concept to define. One way to think of it is a property of matter characterized by the processes of metabolism (transformation of raw material into energy used for growth) and reproduction.

**Logical positivism** A philosophical school arguing that the only statements that are meaningful are those that can be validated, either mathematically or empirically.

**Long term memory** synonym with LTM The third component of human memory that permanently stores a memory in unchanged form and efficiently retrieves that memory when needed.

**Macroevolution** The scientific doctrine stating that organisms have radically changed form over time, resulting in new species. Most creationists oppose macroevolution, but accept microevolution (such as the development of different breeds of dog) because such variation does not result in new species or “kinds”.

**Maintenance rehearsal** The memory process of restimulating ourselves with a stimulus material over and over again to produce a singular, impoverished long term memory image which is fairly easy to store.

**Meiosis** The fundamental mechanism of cell division and reduction in the number of chromosomes that makes it possible for species to reproduce sexually.

**Memory** The brain's storehouse for previous learning experiences.

**Memory hook** An external stimulus cue or internal idea that produces other memory associations (i.e., retrieves other memory engrams).

**Metacognition** The uniquely human activity of using our brains to study how our brains work and improve their functioning.

**Natural determinants** The genes, learning, and trauma; three components of the natural universe postulated to cause all psychological phenomena.

**Natural selection** Biological term referring to constant adaptation through the process of evolution.

**NECs** synonym with non-empirical constructs Hypothetical constructs or hypothesized causal agents that have no real, tangible, observable, measurable, testable existence or identity.

**Neural circuit** A group of two or three to tens of thousands of neurons acting together to produce some psychological phenomenon.

**Neural circuits** Genetically pre-programmed groups of neurons fired by transmission neurons when memory information enters the brain.

**Neural network** In human memory processing, a complex of associated groups of circuits organized and linked by common meanings.

**Neuron** Nerve cell.

**Non-discriminative stimuli** Antecedents that fail to predict what behaviours will be reinforced or nonreinforced.

**Non-empirical constructs** synonym with NECs Hypothetical constructs or hypothesized causal agents that have no real, tangible, observable, measurable, testable existence or identity.

**Old-Earth creationism** The biblically-based belief that our planet is millions of years old, in agreement with modern estimates from geology.

**PaB Theorem** The Psychology-as-Biology Theorem, which essentially characterizes psychology as the scientific study of brain biochemistry.

**Perception** synonym with sensation The result of sensory reception area neurons firing circuits of neurons in sensory association areas and memory circuits so that they become biochemically associated with a sensory code, providing an image or sensory experience in the brain.

**Predispositions** Capacities for developing particular types of thoughts, feelings, and behaviours, but which require specific environmental conditions called triggers to actually manifest themselves.

**Programming** The acquisition of any and all thoughts, feelings, and behaviours.

**Psychiatry** The medical science specializing in the diagnosis and treatment of human psychopathology (abnormal psychology).

**Psychological repertoire** synonym with repertoire Our term for the unique totality of one's thoughts, feelings, and behaviours, replacing the term "personality."

**Psychology** The science of human cognition (thoughts, ideas, memory), affect (emotions, feelings), and behaviour (actions).

**Punctuated equilibria** A paleontological theory proposed by Stephen Gould and Niels Eldredge in 1972, according to which evolution on a geological scale is characterized by "sudden" (i.e., of a duration of tens to hundreds thousand years) bursts of diversification of living organisms (punctuation events), separated by long periods of stasis during which little happens.

**Recall** In human memory, simple one-to-one correspondence.

**Recognition** In human memory, the ability to tell something familiar from something novel.

**Redintegration** The most complex form of human memory, involving several different senses and heavily laden with emotion.

**Relearning** The least qualitative degree of human memory, so impoverished in content that it cannot be used consciously and must be demonstrated under lab conditions.

**Repertoire** synonym with psychological repertoire Our term for the unique totality of one's thoughts, feelings, and behaviours, replacing the term "personality."

**Response cost** Form of inhibition which decreases an undesirable behaviour by removing a positive consequence (from the subject as a result of the behaviour; a fine or penalty).

**Restriction enzymes** Biological molecules often used in biotechnology to cut pieces of DNA. While they are very useful to molecular biologists, their natural function in bacteria is to protect the cell from viral attacks: these enzymes recognize the viral DNA or RNA as foreign and cut it to pieces, thereby destroying the virus. The bacterium's own DNA is spared, a cunning example of natural selection.

**S-R Psychology** synonym with Stimulus-Response Psychology The branch of psychological theorists who scientifically studied everything that went into the brain (stimuli) and everything that came out of the brain (responses) to learn what went on in between.

**Scientific method** The best (most rigorous) means of explaining and predicting cause and effect; techniques of observation, operational definition, hypothesis formation, hypothesis testing, experimentation, replication, and dissemination of results.

**Scientific psychology** synonym with SciPsy Theories and principles of psychology that only use natural, empirical explanatory constructs.

**Scientific understanding** Explanation + prediction; the ability to scientifically explain the cause(s) and accurately predict future occurrences of some phenomenon.

**Scientism** The fundamentalist belief that science can do no wrong and will ultimately answer any question worth answering while in the process saving humankind as a bonus.

**SciPsy** synonym with scientific psychology Theories and principles of psychology that only use natural, empirical explanatory constructs.

**Selective attention** The process by which the human brain screens out stimuli that cannot be processed by short term memory, so that only a manageable amount of information passes to it from sensory memory.

**Sensation** synonym with perception The result of sensory reception area neurons firing circuits of neurons in sensory association areas and memory circuits so that they become biochemically associated with a sensory code, providing an image or sensory experience in the brain.

**Sensory experience** The Central Nervous System function that creates perception, so that humans can attach meaning to sensory stimuli.

**Sensory memory** synonym with SM The first component of human memory that stores a veridical (true, unprocessed) copy of a sensory stimulus for approximately .25 to .50 of a second and passes it on to short term memory.

**Sensory receptors** Specialized neurons that allow sense organs to transduce an energy source external to the Central Nervous System into neural impulses.

**Sensory transmission** The process in which the sensory receptor neuron transduces the stimulus energy into neurochemical energy and fires, sending the resulting neural code up the sensory fibres to the appropriate reception area in the brain.

**Short term memory** synonym with STM The second component of human memory that receives information from the sensory memory, stores it and works on it for 15 to 30 seconds, and passes it on to long term memory.

**SM** synonym with sensory memory The first component of human memory that stores a veridical (true, unprocessed) copy of a sensory stimulus for approximately .25 to .50 of a second and passes it on to short term memory.

**Speciation** The process of origin of new species. It can occur in a variety of ways, which usually involve some degree of reproductive isolation between different populations of the same species. With time, the two populations diverge enough genetically that they cannot interbreed any longer, and are therefore considered different species.

**Specification** According to ID proponent William Dembski, a measure of how well a certain structure matches a given function. Specification has to be added to complexity to generate biological structures that are adapted to live in a certain environment. While scientists would agree with this general picture, they do not see any reason why the coupling of specification and complexity requires an intelligent designer and cannot be achieved by natural means, such as through the biological process of natural selection.

**Stimulus-Response Psychology** synonym with S-R Psychology The branch of psychological theorists who scientifically studied everything that went into the brain (stimuli) and everything that came out of the brain (responses) to learn what went on in between.

**STM** synonym with short term memory The second component of human memory that receives information from the sensory memory, stores it and works on it for 15 to 30 seconds, and passes it on to long term memory.

**Superstrings theory** A novel theory in physics that attempts to explain the

fundamental structure of the universe in terms of "strings" of energy which, by vibrating at different frequencies, originate all the known physical particles.

**Telos** Greek word representing Aristotle's idea that living beings have an innate natural tendency toward a particular end. It is not clear to what extent Aristotle meant this to be a property put in place by a supernatural entity as opposed to being a natural characteristic of life.

**The Origin of Species** The title of Charles Darwin's 1859 book that presented the first coherent picture of the modern theory of evolution.

**Theistic evolution** The idea that evolution does occur, but it is guided by God.

**Theists** People who believe in one or more personal gods or goddesses.

**Theory** A more mature, more complex, and wider-ranging human mental construct than a hypothesis.

**Unreflective instrumentalism** The concept that thought has no value unless it is of practical importance, yielding a disdain for theoretical inquiry and for intellectual pursuit per se. This attitude is rooted in rampant capitalism, where the Protestant work ethic and material success are more esteemed than esoterica.

**YEC** synonym with young-Earth creationism The biblically-based belief that our planet is only a few thousand years old.

**Young-Earth creationism** synonym with YEC The biblically-based belief that our planet is only a few thousand years old.

## A GLOSSARY OF SHINTOISM



**Aikido** Japanese martial art

**Amaterasu Omikami** The divinity of the Sun

**Amatsumi** Pollution from above

**Ame-no-iwato** A cave

**Ame no Minakanushi** The Master of the August Centre of Heaven

**Ame no Ukihashi** The Floating Bridge of Heaven

**Ameuzume-no-Mikoto** Subdues the fish of the sea

**Ameuzume Okami** (Ame-no-uzume-no-kami) Wife of Sarutahiko Okami

**Bonenkai** Year end parties

**Bunke goshintai** A branch of the sacred worship object to represent the spirit of Sarutahiko Okami

**Butsудо** The way of the Buddha

**Chinkon** Shinto spiritual exercises

**Chinkonto** Way of spiritual practice

**Chi-no-miya** number one shrines

**Chohai** Morning worship

**Chowa** Harmony

**Daijinja** Grand Shrine Okamiyashiro is another way of reading the same characters

**Daishizen** The great cosmos, the Great Nature, the vast cosmic setting into which we are born

**Do** or **To** a "way". It can be the ordinary word for a road

**Ebisu** the guardian kami particularly of merchants and also of rice fields

**Fundoshi** loin cloth

**Furitama** Soul Shaking

**Gohei** White paper streamers, cut and folded sacred paper

**Gon-Guji** Associate High Priest

**Gon-Negi** Junior priests

**Gosaijin** Enshrined kami

**Goshintai** Object of reverence

**Gu** Suffix of shrines connected with imperial house

**Guji** High Priest

**Gyo** Discipline

**Gyoji** Events of the year

**Gyomando** Building where spirits of deceased are revered

**Hachimaki** Headband

**Haiden** Outer worship hall or sanctuary

**Haraiden** Purification hall

**Harai-gushi** A wand of paper streamers

**Hatsumode** New Year's celebration  
**Heiden** Rooted room with walls  
**Honden** (or Shinden) Main worship sanctuary, main Shrine  
**Honji-Suijaku-Setsu** The idea of the one religion being the manifestation of another hongu or principal shrine

**Ibuki** Breathing  
**Ireisai** A memorial ceremony for the war dead  
**Ise -no-Ichi-no-Miya** The first shrine of the Ise district.  
**Izanagi no Mikoto** The Male Who Invites  
**Izanami no Mikoto** The Female Who Invites  
**Izumo Taisha** The Great Shrine of Izumo

**Jinja** Shrine  
**Jinja Honcho** Voluntary Association of Shinto Shrines  
**Jinja Shinto** Shrine Shinto  
**Jingu** Shrine with imperial connection

**Kagura** A re-enactment of the dance of Ameuzume-no-Mikoto  
**Kami** Divine (either plural or singular)  
**Kamidana** The shelf on which the miniature shrine is placed and the offerings made to the kami  
**Kami Musubi no Kami** The Divine Producing Wondrous Kami  
**Kami no Michi** The way of the kami  
**Kannagara** The way of the kami, the way of the divine as perceived by the Japanese spirit, movements that go "along with the kami," "Natural Religion"  
**Kannushi** Someone who is master in charge or guardian of the house in which the kami resides.  
**Kansha** Simply giving things to the powers that make mankind their care  
**Kempetai** The special police  
**Ki** Spirit in its causal aspect - Ki is a kind of energy source  
**Kigansai** A prayer of purification for the peace of the world  
**Kikinaoshi** Obedient  
**Kito** A kind of purification and blessing  
**Kogakuin University** Was originally State Shinto college which was closed briefly after the War. It was under supervision of the Grand Shrines of Ise and was known as Ise-Senmon Gakko. This is now known as Kogaku-kan or Kogaku Centre  
**Kojiki** Record of Ancient Matters  
**Kokka Shinto** State Shinto  
**Kokuryuon-no-Okami** Kami of water, life and ki  
**Kon** The soul  
**Kotodama** The study of the origins of the meaning and use of words by reference to their sound and soul  
**Kotodamagaku** The scientific method of studying Kotodama  
**kugyo** a kind of ascetic discipline  
**Kuni Tokotachi no Kami** The Eternally Standing Heavenly Kami  
**Kunitokotachi-no-Mikoto** The earthly kami  
**Kunistumi** Pollution from below  
**Matsuri** The festivals

**Mei** Life  
**Michihiko** Leader  
**Miko** Shrine maidens  
**Misogi** The physical act of ritual purification in water  
**Misogi harai** Purification under a free-standing waterfall  
**Musubi** Horizontal knot; also the power of creativity

**Naihaiden** Inner sanctuary  
**Nakaima** Literally "in the middle of now"  
**Naorai** Ceremonial drinking with the kami  
**Negi** Senior priest  
**Nen-chu-gyo-ji** Literally "year-round-discipline-rituals"  
**Ni-hai-ni-hakushi-ippai** Two bows, two claps and a final bow  
**Niju-ni-sha** The twenty-two very important shrines  
**Nihongi** The "Chronicles of Japan" written around the year 720  
**Nihonshoki** Japanese classic  
**Ninigi-no-Mikoto noorito** Words of ceremonial, ceremonial address to the kami

**O** An honorific, preceding many terms  
**Obarae** The two great days of national purification (June 30th and December 31st)  
**Obon** Buddhist festival for the souls of the ancestors  
**Oharai** Purification  
**Okuni-nushi-Okami** The kami of happiness  
**Omamori** A talisman  
**Omotte sando** The main road into the shrine precincts  
**Onokoro-jima** The earth  
**Oshogatsu** New Year

**Rei** spirit  
**Reishoan** Tea House  
**Rinne** Buddhist term for transmigration of the soul

**Saisei-Itchi** The union of Religion and State in Kokka Shinto  
**Sakaki** The evergreen tree  
**Sakashio** Purifying salt  
**Sambo** Offering stand  
**Sammi-sangen** The principle of the three elements that constitute existence: gas, liquid and solid  
**Sampai** Formal shrine worship  
**Sando** Pathway  
**Sangen** Three main factors  
**Sangen-no-hosoku** Rule of three main factors  
**Sanshu-no-Jingi** The three sacred treasures of the Imperial Regalia, the Mirror, the Sword and the Jewel  
**Sarutahiko Daihongu** Dai means great, hon means head and gu is a suffix which means shrine with an imperial connection. The same character for gu can also be read miya which can mean either shrine or palace.



**Sarutahiko Okami** The head of the earthly kami, the pioneer of the way of rightness and justice  
**Shaku** The wooden flat stick carried by Shinto priests  
**Shamusho** Shrine offices  
**Shichi-Go-San** Literally Seven-Five-Three--the children's festival  
**Shimenawa** The rope that marks off a purified area  
**Shime-to-naru** "To be a knot."  
**Shinboku** The sacred tree  
**Shinden** Inclusive term for all Shrine halls  
**Shinenkai** New year parties  
**Shingon** True Word Buddhism  
**Shinsen** offerings to the kami  
**Shinsenho** Ancient ritual based on numerology  
**Shinshoku** Literally kami-employment  
**Shinko** Faith  
**Shintoism** Ancient religion of Japan, meaning the 'Way of the Gods'.  
**Shinsen** The specially prepared food offerings to the enshrined kami, rice, the sustainer of life, water the basis of life and salt, the purifier of life.  
**Shishido** Lion Hall  
**Shishimai** Lion dance  
**Shi-shi-mai-shinji** The power of the lion dance  
**Showa age** (1926-present)  
**Shugendo** Literally, the way of mountain asceticism  
**Susanoo-no-Mikoto** The deity of the stars  
**Susuharai** A ceremonial house cleaning  
  
**Taisai** Great Festival around the third weekend of February each year  
**Taisho Era** (1912-1926)  
**Takaamahara** The Plain of High Heaven, i.e. the entire universe, the cosmos  
**Takamanohara** The solar system  
**Takami Musubi no Kami** The High August producing Kami  
**Takunan Juku** A Senmon Gakko, a vocational college  
**Tate** Vertical dimension  
**Te-mizu-ya** The ablution pavilion  
**Torii** Great gate  
**Tsukiyomi** The Deity of the Moon  
**Tsumi** Impurity and wrong  
  
**Ujiko** or **Ujiko-sodai** The committee of representatives of the shrine's parishioners  
**Ukeau** Spirit of undertaking a mission  
**Umashi Ashikabi Hikoji no Kami** The Pleasant Reed Shoot Elderly Kami  
  
**Waketama** Separated individual souls, "children of the kami"  
  
**Yakuyuo** A talisman, or omamori  
**Yashiki-gami** Household kami, the guardian of the household  
**Yayoi age** Primitive, prehistoric age  
**Yoko** Horizontal dimension  
**Yomi no Kuni** The underworld, the land of pollution

**Yukinari Yamamoto** Elder brother of author  
**Yukiteru Yamamoto** Father of author  
**Yukiyasu Yamamoto** Adopted son of author

## SIKHISM GLOSSARY



Sikh terms are drawn from the Punjabi language, and the versions below are based upon that language. Many of these terms will also be found in books on Hinduism and Buddhism but with somewhat different meanings. As with all transliterations, there are problems which are difficult to resolve. This is particularly true when moving from the Gurmukhi script which has an alphabet of 35 letters, to the Roman alphabet which has only 26 letters. Names of persons and places are only included in this list if variant forms are commonly used.

**Akal Purakh** The Eternal One. A designation frequently used of God by Guru Nanak.

**Akal Takht** Akal Takhat Throne of the Eternal; throne of the Timeless One. Building facing the Golden Temple in Amritsar, where Sikhs gather for political purposes.

**Akhand Path** Continuous reading of the Guru Granth Sahib from beginning to end.

**Amrit** Nectar. Sanctified liquid made of sugar and water, used in initiation ceremonies.

**Amrit ceremony** Amrit Sanskar Amrit Pahul Khande di Pahul Sometimes just 'Amrit' or 'Taking Amrit' ('Amrit Chhakna') The Sikh rite of initiation into the Khalsa. 'Baptism' should not be used.

**Anand karaj** Anand Sanskar Ceremony of bliss. Wedding ceremony.

**Ardas Prayer.** The formal prayer offered at most religious acts.

**Baisakhi** Vaisakhi A major Sikh festival celebrating the formation of the Khalsa, 1699 CE.

**Bangla Sahib** The site of the martyrdom of Guru Har Krishan (Delhi).

**Bhai Khanaya** A Sikh commended by Guru Gobind Singh for serving water to the enemy wounded.

**Bhai Lalo** A humble carpenter who opened his house to Guru Nanak. The Guru preferred Bhai Lalo's simple food to the offerings of a local rich merchant.

**Birth of Guru Nanak Dev Ji** Sikh honouring of the birthday of their founder.

**Chanani** Chandni Canopy over the scriptures, used as a mark of respect.

**Chauri** Chaur Symbol of the authority of the Guru Granth Sahib. Fan waved over scriptures, made of yak hairs or nylon. It should not be called a 'fly whisk'.

**Dasam Granth** Collection of compositions, some of which are attributed to the tenth Sikh Guru, compiled some years after his death.

**Death of Guru Nanak Dev** Observance of the passing of the first great Guru

**First Parkash** The Sikh scripture, Adi Granth, is installed in the Golden Temple.

**Five K's** The five symbols of the Sikh faith.

**Giani** A person learned in the Sikh scriptures.

**Granthi** Reader of the Guru Granth Sahib, who officiates at ceremonies.

**Gurbani** Bani, Vani Divine word revealed by the Gurus. The Shabads contained in the Guru Granth Sahib.

**Gurdwara** Gurudwara Sikh place of worship. Literally the 'doorway to the Guru'.

**Gurmat** The Guru's guidance.

**Gurmukh** One who lives by the Guru's teaching.

**Gurmukhi** From the Guru's mouth. Name given to the script in which the scriptures and the Punjabi language are written.

**Gurpurb** Gurpurab A Guru's anniversary (birth or death). Also used for other anniversaries, eg, of the installation of the Adi Granth, 1604 CE.

**Guru** Teacher. In Sikhism, the title of Guru is reserved for the ten human Gurus and the Guru Granth Sahib.

**Guru Arjan** The fifth Guru who was the first Sikh martyr (1563-1606).

**Guru Arjan Dev Martyrdom** Time of remembering those who have suffered for the faith. Observed by reading the Guru Granth Sahib.

**Guru Gobind Singh** Guru Govind Singh (Original name: Guru Gobind Rai) Tenth Sikh Guru. It is important to note that the title 'Guru' must be used with all the Gurus' names. Sikhs usually use further terms of respect, eg, Guru Gobind Singh Ji or Guru Nanak Dev Ji.

**Guru Gobind Singh's Birthday** honouring of the birth of the founder of the Khalsa who lived from 1469 -1539 C.E.

**Guru Granth Sahib** Adi Granth (Granth' by itself should be avoided) Primal collection of Sikh scriptures, compiled by Guru Arjan and given its final form by Guru Gobind Singh.

**Guru Har Gobind** Guru Hargobind Guru Hargovind Sixth Sikh Guru.

**Guru Har Krishan** Guru Harkishan Guru Harkrishan Eighth Sikh Guru.

**Guru Nanak** The first Guru and the founder of the Sikh faith (1469-1539).

**Guru Nanak's Day** Sikh honouring of the birth of the first Sikh teacher who lived from 1469 -1539 C.E. Sacred readings, prayers, hymns, meals together.

**Guru Tegh Bahadur** The ninth Guru who was martyred for the principle of religious tolerance (1622-1675).

**Guru Tegh Bahadur Martyrdom** Time of remembering the execution of Teg Bahadur by the Moghul Emperor in India.

**Guru Granth Sahib Installation** Remembrance of the eternal installation of the holy books, Granth Sahib.

**Haumai** Egoism. The major spiritual defect.

**Hola Mohalla** Day when mock battles are fought and martial arts are displayed. It coincides with the Hindu festival of Holi

**Hukam** God's will.

**Hukam** Vak Random reading taken for guidance from the Guru Granth Sahib.

**Ik Onkar** There is only One God. The first phrase of the Mool Mantar. It is also used as a symbol to decorate Sikh objects.

**Janamsakhi** Janam Sakhi Birth stories. Hagiographic life stories of a Guru, especially Guru Nanak.

**Japji Sahib** A morning prayer, composed by Guru Nanak, which forms the first chapter of the Guru Granth Sahib.

**Jivan Mukht** Jivan Mukht Enlightened while in the material body; a spiritually enlightened person, freed from worldly bonds.

**Kachera** Traditional underwear/shorts. One of the five K's (see panj kakke).

**Kakka** Singular of the Punjabi letter K (plural 'Kakke') See panj kakke.

**Kangha** Kanga Comb worn in the hair. One of the five K's (see panj kakke).

**Kara** Steel band worn on the right wrist. One of the five K's (see panj kakke).

**Karah parshad** Karah Prasad Sanctified food distributed at Sikh ceremonies.

**Kaur** Princess. Name given to all Sikh females by Guru Gobind Singh (see Singh).

**Kesh** Kes Uncut hair. One of the five K's (see panj kakke).

**Khalsa** The community of the pure. The Sikh community.

**Khanda** Double-edged sword used in the initiation ceremony. Also used as the emblem on the Sikh flag.

**Kirat karna** Earning one's livelihood by one's own efforts.

**Kirpan** Sword. One of the five K's (see panj kakke). 'Dagger' should be avoided.

**Kirtan** Devotional singing of the compositions found in the Guru Granth Sahib.

**Kirtan** Sohila A prayer said before retiring for sleep. It is also used at the cremation ceremony and when the Guru Granth Sahib is laid to rest.

**Kurahit** Prohibitions, eg intoxicants.

**Langar** Guru ka Langar Guru's kitchen. The gurdwara dining hall and the food served in it.

**Maghi** Commemoration of a battle in which forty Sikhs died for Guru Gobindh Singh Ji.

**Martyrdom of Guru Arjan Dev** Time of remembering those who have suffered for the faith. Observed by reading the Guru Granth Sahib.

**Mela** Fair. Used of Sikh festivals which are not gurburbs.

**Manji** Manji Sahib Small platform on which the scripture is placed.

**Manmukh** Munmukh Self-orientated (as opposed to gurmukh).

**Mool Mantar** Mul Mantar Basic teaching; essential teaching. The basic statement of belief at the beginning of the Guru Granth Sahib.

**Nam Simran** Nam Simaran Naam Simran Meditation on the divine name, using passages of scripture.

**Nankana Sahib** Birthplace of Guru Nanak. Now in Pakistan.

**Nishan Sahib** Sikh flag flown at gurdwaras.

**Nit nem** The recitation of specified daily prayers.

**Panj kakke** The five K's. The symbols of Sikhism worn by Sikhs.

**Panj piare** Panj Pyare (other forms may also be found) The five beloved ones. Those first initiated into the Khalsa; those who perform the rite today.

**Panth** The Sikh community.

**Patases** Patashas Sugar bubbles or crystals used to prepare Amrit.

**Punjab** Panjab Land of five rivers. The area of India in which Sikhism originated.

**Ragi** Sikh musician who sings compositions from the Guru Granth Sahib.

**Rahit** Sikh obligations, eg, to meditate on God.

**Rahit Maryada** Rehat Maryada Sikh Code of Discipline.

**Sadhsangat** Sangat Congregation or assembly of Sikhs.

**Sewa** Seva Service directed at the sadhsangat and gurdwara, but also to humanity in general.

**Shabad** Sabad Shabd Word. Hymn from the Guru Granth Sahib; the divine word.

**Sikh** Learner; disciple. A person who believes in the ten Gurus and the Guru Granth Sahib, and who has no other religion.

**Singh** Lion. Name adopted by Sikh males (see kaur).

**Sis Ganj Sahib** The site of the martyrdom of Guru Tegh Bahadur (Delhi).

Vaisakhi (**Baisakhi**) Hindu solar new year. For Sikhs the day remembers Guru Gobind Singh and the founding of the militant fraternity of Sikhs named Kahlsa. The day is observed by temple worship, feasting and dancing.

**Vak** Vaak A random reading taken for guidance from the Guru Granth Sahib.

**Vand chhakna** Sharing one's time, talents and earnings with the less fortunate.

**Waheguru** Wonderful Lord. A Sikh name for God.

## GLOSSARY OF TAOIST TERMS



**Acupuncture** Traditional Chinese medical treatment using needles to stimulate the flow of ch'i in the body.

**Chai** fast (go without food and drink)

**Ch'ang** (literally "enduring"). The permanent and eternal.

**Chang Kuo-lao** One of the Eight Immortals. Connected with a historical figure of the T'ang dynasty, his symbol is a fish-drum.

**Chiao** (literally "doctrine"). Religion.

**Chia** (literally "school of transmission"). Philosophy.

**Ch'i** (literally "air, "breath, "strength"). Life energy that flows throughout the human body and the universe.

**Ching** (literally "semen"). Vital essence.

**Chuang-Tzu** A Taoist teacher who developed Lao-Tzu's ideas

**Chung-li Ch'uan** One of the Eight Immortals. He is depicted as a stout man with a near-bald head but a long beard. His symbol is a fan, indicating power to raise the dead.

**Chang Ling** Known as 'heavenly teacher' by his followers. He collected, as pay for his teaching, five bushels of rice so his society became known as 'the Way of five Bushels of Rice'

**Han Hsiang-tzu** One of the Eight Immortals. The patron of music, he is depicted as a peaceful mountain-dweller with a flute, flowers and a peach.

**Ho Hsien-ku** The only female Immortal.

**Hsien** (literally "fluttering") The Immortals, who are described in the writings of *Chuang-tzu*. Perhaps originally intended to be allegorical, the nature and abilities of these beings became a practical goal for later Taoists.

**Hsin** Heart or mind.

**Lao-tzu** Born about 604 BCE An older contemporary of Confucius, early Taoist thinker who was made a god after his death

**Ling-pao P'ai** (literally "School of the Magic Jewel"). Movement within religious Taoism based on *Ling-pao Ching*. Influenced by Buddhist devotion to bodhisattvas, it teaches that liberation depends on help from deities (t'ien-tsun). A central ritual is a formal fast (*chai*).

**Ming** Name. In Chinese thought, to name something is to assign it a place in the hierarchy of the universe. The Tao is therefore nameless.

**Pa-hsien** (literally "Eight Immortals"). Taoist figures associated with good fortune and the eight conditions of life that are frequently portrayed in Chinese art and literature. They are: Li T'ieh-juai; Chang Kuo-lao; Ts'ao Kuo-chiu; Han Hsiang-tzu; Lu Tung-pen; Ho Hsien-ku; Lan Ts'ai-ho; and Chung-li Ch'uan.

**P'an-ku** Taoist creator of the world and also the first human. He emerged from the original chaos in the form of an egg, and at this death, his body was allocated to the creation of different parts of the world.

**P'u** (literally "uncarved block"). State of simplicity and true nature, as in infancy, before being shaped by knowledge, morality and other influences of society. For Lao-Tzu, this is the state of the ideal ruler.

**San-tsing** Three gods or pure ones – Yuh-hwang Shang-ti, creator and source of all truth; Wan-chang who looks after learning and Lao-tse, who was made a god after his death

**Seven Sages of the Bamboo Grove** After the fall of the Han Dynasty in China, between the 3<sup>rd</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> centuries CE, there was disorder and disintegration. The sages saw wine and witty conversation as the goal of life.

**Shen** Spiritual consciousness.

**T'ai chi** (literally "Great Polarity.") Yin and yang.

**T'ai chi chu'uan** (literally "Great Polarity Boxing.") Martial art aimed at harnessing the strength of chi.

**Tao** (literally "Way" In Chinese it is used to refer to streets and paths, in Taoism it may be referred to as 'the great way of the universe'). Unchanging principle behind the universe; unproduced producer of all that is. The *Tao-te Ching* describes it as "something formlessly fashioned, that existed before Heaven and Earth." It was like water, hard to contain

**Tao-shih** Scholars and ritual functionaries of religious Taoism.

**Tao-te Ching** Literally "Book of the Way and its Power.", sometimes known as 'the classic of the way and its virtue') Foundational text of Taoism. Attributed to Lao-tzu and probably composed in the 4th century BCE, it teaches about the Tao. It is a poem of between 65 and 81 verses (depending on which version you have)

**Tao-te t'ien-tsun** Ruler of Taoist heaven of highest purity; San-ch'ing.

**Tao-tsang** Taoist canon of authoritative texts.

**Tao-yin** Exercise for guiding the breath to different parts of the body.

**Te** (literally "power" or "virtue"). Means through which the Tao becomes manifest and actualized.

**T'ien-tsun** Deities, gods

**Tzu-jan** Spontaneity; unconditioned and totally itself. The Tao is characterized by *tzu-jan*.

**Wan-chang** A god who looks after learning

**The Way of five Bushels of Rice** see Chang Ling

**Wu** Not-Being. Not synonymous with nothingness, *wu* is an immense void containing all potentialities. It is thus interdependent with *yu*, Being.

**Wu-wei** (literally "non-action.") The ideal for rulers as set out in the *Tao te Ching*.

**Yang** The power which produces all firm, solid, warm and bright things and is masculine, when things go well (summer months). The powers of Yin and Yang are not seen as 'good and evil' must be balanced

**Yin** The power that gives soft, moist, changeable things and is feminine, when things go badly (winter months). The powers of Yin and Yang are not seen as 'good and evil' must be balanced

**Yu** Being.

**Yuh-hwang Shang-ti** Creator and source of all truth



# GLOSSARY OF ZOROASTRIAN TERMS



**Aban** (Pahlavi, Persian) Water; name of a yazad presiding over water; name of the tenth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; name of the eighth month.

**Ab-zohr** (Pahlavi) Literally "libation to the waters"; a section of the Yasna. (Y62.11-Y70).

**Achaemenian** The dynasty which ruled Iran from the time of Cyrus the Great (559 B.C.E.) to the invasion of Alexander the Great (330 B.C.E.) (Variant 'Achaemenid')

**Adar** Fire; yazad presiding over fire; name of the ninth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar. (Variant: ader, Pah. 'atash, atesh, adur', Avestan 'Atar')

**Adar Burzin** (Pahlavi) One of the three greatest sacred fires of Zoroastrianism (the other two being 'Adar Farnbag' and 'Adar Gushasp'). It was placed in a temple by Kay Vishtasp himself, after it had 'revealed many things visibly, in order to propagate the faith' (GBd 18.14). (Variant: 'Adur Burzen-Mihr')

**Adar Farnbag** Sacred fire.

**Adar Gushasp** Sacred fire. (variant Ader Goushasp)

**Adarbad Mahrspandan** (Pahlavi) A Zoroastrian High priest, prime minister of Shapur II (309-379 CE)

**Aeshma** See Eshm.

**Afrasiyab** (Persian) A Turanian king who repeatedly attempted to overthrow the Iranians. (Variant: 'Franrasyab')

**Afrin** (Pahlavi) Literally 'blessing, benediction', specific prayers of blessing (in Pazand).

**Afrinagan** (Pahlavi) A multi-part ceremony of blessing; specific prayers in the Avesta which are recited during afrinagan ceremonies; a ceremonial vessel in which the sacred fire is tended. (Variant: 'afringan, afargan')

**Agiary** (Gujarati) Literally 'place of fire', a fire temple. The more traditional term is 'Dar-e Mihr' (Variant: 'agiari')

**Ahriman** (Pahlavi) The Devil, literally 'Hostile/Destructive Spirit'. (Variant: Pahlavi 'Ahreman', GAv. 'Angra Mainyu', StdAv. 'Anra Mainyu').

**Ahu** (Avestan) Spiritual lord or master, often found in conjunction with 'ratu'.

**Ahunawad** Name of the first Gatha; name of the first Gatha day.

**Ahunwar** (Pahlavi) The holiest prayer of the Zoroastrians. It begins with the Avestan phrase 'yatha ahu vairyo'. (Variant: 'Ahunvar, Ahunawar', Avestan 'Ahuna vairyo').

**Ahura Mazda** (Avestan) God, literally 'Wise Lord', the Supreme Being of the Zoroastrians. (Variant: Pahlavi 'Ohrmazd')

**Airyaman** Yazad of friendship and healing.

**Airyaniem** Vaejah (Avestan) See Eranvej.

**Alburz** A cosmic mountain, aka 'Haraiti' or 'Hara Berezaiti'; an actual mountain range in northern Iran.

**Amahraspand** (Pahlavi) Literally 'Beneficent Immortals', the highest spiritual beings created by Ahura Mazda. Sometimes referred to as 'archangels'. Their names are (Pahlavi): Vohuman, Ardwhisht, Shahrewar, Spandarmad, Hordad, Amurdad. (Variant '**Amashaspand**, Amahraspand', Avestan 'Amesha')

Spenta')

Ameretat (Avestan) see Amurdad.

**Amesha Spenta** (Avestan) See Amahraspand.

**Amurdad** (Pahlavi) Literally 'Immortality', the Amahraspand presiding over the Earth; name of the seventh day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; name of the fifth month. (Variant: Avestan 'Ameretat', Phr. 'Amardad')

**Anagran** Literally 'endless light', name of a yazad; name of the thirtieth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; (Variant. Aneran)

**Andarz** (Pahlavi) (literally 'gnomic, precept') Collection of aphorisms, especially of pragmatic advice or moral instruction

**Aneran** See Anagran.

**Angra Mainyu** See Ahriman.

**Anjoman** (Persian) Association (Variant: 'anjuman')

**Anosharawan** (Pahlavi) Soul of deceased person, as opposed to Zindarawan, a living soul. (Variant: 'anosheh-ravan')

**Ard** Literally 'good blessings, rewards', name of the yazad presiding over blessings; name of the twenty-fifth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar. (Variant: '**Ashishwangh**, Arshishwang', Avestan 'Ashi Vanghuhi')

**Ardafrawash** (Pahlavi) Literally 'Asha-possessing farohar', i.e. the farohar (guardian angel) of a holy person.

**Ardashir** (Persian) A king of ancient Iran, founder of the Sasanian dynasty.

**Arda Viraf** (Persian): a priest of the early Sasanian period, author of a Pahlavi book which describes his visions of heaven and hell (Variant: Pahlavi 'Ardag Wiraz')

**Ardibehesht** (Persian) see Ardwhisht.

**Ardwhisht** (Pahlavi) The Amahraspand presiding over Asha and fire; name of the third day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; name of the second month (Variant. Avestan 'Asha Vahishta', Pahlavi 'Ashwah, Urdwah, Urdibehesht')

**Aredvi Sura Anahita** (Avestan) Literally 'strong, immaculate Anahita', name of a female yazad; name of a mythical river. (Variant: Arduisur)

**Arezahi** See karshwar.

**Arsacid** A royal dynasty founded by Ashk. It is also known as the Parthian dynasty (247 B.C.E.-226 C.E.)

**Asha** (Avestan) A fundamental concept of Zoroastrianism; there is no adequate translation, although the following are often used: World-order, Truth, Right, righteousness, holiness;

**Ardwhisht** (Sanskrit 'rta') the Amahraspand ('Beneficent Immortal) presiding over Asha and fire; name of the third day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; name of the second month (Variant. Avestan 'Asha Vahishta', Pahlavi 'Ashwah, Urdwah, Urdibehesht')

**Asha Vahishta** (Avestan): see Ardwhisht.

**Ashavan** Literally 'possessing Asha', a righteous or just person or being.

**Ashem vohu** (Avestan) One of the most sacred prayers of Zoroastrianism, which praises Asha.

**Ashk** (Pahlavi) Founder of the Arsacid dynasty (Variant: 'Arshak', Greek 'Arsaces')

**Ashmogh** (Pahlavi) An apostate, a heretic. (Avestan Ashemaogha)

**Ashtad** (Pahlavi) Literally 'rectitude, justice', name of a yazad presiding over justice; name of the twenty-sixth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar. (Variant 'Arshtat')

**Asman** (Pahlavi) Literally 'sky', name of the yazad presiding over the sky; name of the twenty-seventh day of the month according to the Zoroastrianism religious calendar.

**Astwihad** (Pahlavi) A demon of death. (Variant: Pahlavi 'Astvihad, Astovidad', Avestan 'Astovidhotu, Asto-widhatu')

**Aspandiyar** (Parsi Persian) An early hero of the Zoroastrian religion, son of Kay Vishtasp. (Variant. Persian 'Ispandiyar, Isfandiyar')

**Atash** (Pahlavi, Persian) See Adar.

**Atash Adaran** (Persian) The middle grade of consecrated fire.

**Atash Bahram** (Persian) Literally 'victorious fire', the highest grade of consecrated fire.

**Atash Dadgah** (Persian) The lowest grade of consecrated fire.

**Athornan** (Pazand) A man of priestly class (Variant: 'athrawan, athravan').

**Avesta** (Persian) The holy scriptures of Zoroastrianism (Variant: Pahlavi 'abestag, abistag'); the language of the Avesta (Variant. 'Avestan');

**Ayathrem** Feast (gahambar) of bringing home the herds.

**Az** (Pahlavi, Persian) The demon of greed.

**Baga** (Persian) God.

**Bahman (1)** (Persian) See Vohuman.

**Bahman (2)** (Persian) Name of an Achaemenian king.

**Bahram (1)** (Persian) See Warharan.

**Bahram (2)** (Persian) Name of several kings in Iranian history.

**Baj** (Persian) ritual silence, literally 'framing', a ritual utterance or prayer which frames an action with the power of the manthra; a high liturgical service (Dron service); the monthly or anniversary day of the deceased.

**Bandagi** (Persian) Prayer.

**Barashnom** (Pahlavi) A major ritual of purification lasting nine days. (Variant 'bareshnum, barashnum, barashnum-i no shab').

**Baresman** (Avestan) See barsom.

**barsom** (Pahlavi) A bundle of twigs, tied together with a date-palm cord, held by the priest during high liturgies. Current practice is to substitute metal wires; grass laid out for the yazads to sit on. (Variant. Avestan 'baresman')

**Behdin** (Persian) Literally 'of the Good Religion', a Zoroastrian, especially a lay person.

**Behesht** (Persian) Paradise.

**Bhagaria** (Gujarati) A group of priests noted for upholding ancient traditions. They are headquartered in Navsari.

**Bhandar** The central well of the dakhma

**Bharucha** (Gujarati) A group of priests headquartered in Bharuch.

**Bhasam** Consecrated ash from a Fire-temple, used ritually.

**Bi-namaz** Literally 'without prayer', a term for women in menses.

**Boy** (Pahlavi) Literally 'offering incense', a ceremony of offering sandalwood and frankincense to the consecrated fire during each of the five watches of the day. (Variant 'bui, nirang-i bui dadan, boy dadan')

**Bundahishn** (Pahlavi) A ninth-century Pahlavi text.

**Bushasp** (Pahlavi) The demon of sloth (Variant: Avestan 'Bushyasta')

**Chechast** (Pahlavi) Mythical lake.

**Chinwad** (Pahlavi) A bridge which souls of the dead cross and where they are judged (Variant: Chinvat, Chinvar, Avestan Chinavat)

**Daena** (Avestan) See den.

**Daeva** (Avestan) See dew.

**Dahm** (Pahlavi) A yazad honoured on the fourth day after death; the plural, 'dahman' is synonymous with hamkar.

**Dahman Afrin** Embodiment of Prayer

**Daitya** (Avestan) A sacred river in Eranvej.

**Dakhma** (Avestan) A tower-like structure on which dead bodies are exposed, also known as 'tower of silence'.

**Damawand** (Pahlavi, Persian) A famous mountain in Iran tied with Zoroastrianism. (Variant: 'Demavand')

**Dar-e Mihr** (Persian) A lesser fire temple; the area of a fire temple where high liturgies are performed. Literally 'Place of Mihr' (Variant Dar-i Mihr, Dar-i-Meher)

**Dashtan** (Pahlavi, Persian) Menstruation.

**Dastur** (Persian) A high priest (Variant: Pahlavi 'dastwar')

**Dawar** (Persian) Judge. (Variant: Pahlavi 'dadwar')

**Day-pa-Adar** Name of the eighth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar.

**Day-pa-Den** Name of the twenty-third day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar.

**Day-pa-Mihr** Name of the fifteenth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar.

**den/din** (Pahlavi, Persian) 1. 'religion', 2. 'inner self/conscience', name of the yazad presiding over the religion; name of the twenty-fourth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar. (Variant: Avestan Daena).

**Denkard** (Pahlavi) A ninth-century Pahlavi text, comprising a major survey of the religion.

**Dew** (Pahlavi) A demon. (Variant: 'dev', Avestan 'daeva', OLD PERSIAN 'daiva')

**Dharma-shala** (Gujarati) Charitable institution.

**Dibache** (Persian) Literally 'preface', a preliminary prayer (in Pazand) which names the spiritual being that a ceremony is dedicated to. It also names the benefactor and person in whose honour the ceremony is performed.

**Dozakh** (Persian) Hell.

**Dron** (Pahlavi) Consecrated flat unleavened bread; a service in which bread is consecrated. (Variant: 'darun', Av: 'draona, draonangha').

**Druj** (Avestan) Embodiment of evil and pollution, demon of the lie, falsehood. (Variant: 'drug', OLD PERSIAN 'drauga')

**Druji nasush** (Pahlavi) The corpse demon.

**Duwazdah homast** (Pahlavi) A high liturgy consisting of 12 sections, where Vendidad and Yasna is recited. (Variant 'dwazdah-homast, dvazdeh-homast, davazdah hamast')

**Eranvej** Literally 'Iranian expanse', home of the Aryans. (Variant 'Eran-wez', Avestan 'Airyanem Vaejah, Airyana Waejah')

**Ervad** (Parsi Gujarati) A priest, originally a title used for priest of higher rank, currently used to refer to a priest who has undergone the first stage of initiation into priesthood (nawar). (Variant: Pahlavi 'erbad', 'herbad', Av: 'aethrapati')

**Eshm** Demon of Fury/Wrath. (Variant Avestan 'Aeshma', Pahlavi 'Xeshm')

**Fargard** (Pahlavi) Literally 'chapter, section', a term designating sections of the Vendidad and other books of the Avesta. Compare with kardah. (Variant 'fragard')

**Faridoon** (Persian) Name of a heroic king of ancient Iran who flourished centuries before Zarathushtra. (Variant: Avestan 'Thraetaona', Persian 'Fariydun')

**Farohar** (Persian) Guardian angel, guardian spirits of the living and dead. (Variant: Pahlavi '**frohar, fravard, fravahr**', Avestan 'fravashi')

**Farokhshi** (Gujarati) Parsi name for a ceremony dedicated to the farohars.

**Farziyat** (Arabic) Obligatory prayers said in each of the five watches ('gahs') of the day.

**Fasali** The Zoroastrian seasonal calendar - "fasal" means "season". These dates remain unchanged from year to year.

**Fasli** (Persian, Arabic) Zoroastrians who follow a religious calendar which intercalculates one day every four years, patterned after the Gregorian calendar. (Compare with Qadimi and Shahanshahi.)

**Feast of Mithra** Festival with focus on Mithra as the angel of light. From ancient times in Iran it has been a time of gratitude for life and light.

**Firdausi** (Persian) Author of the Persian epic Shah-nama (Book of Kings) in which many Zoroastrian myths are recorded.

**Fireshte** (Persian) A spiritual being/angel, used interchangeable with yazad. (Variant. 'fireshta, fereshte')

**Fradadhafshu** See karshwar.

**Frashegird** Literally 'making wonderful', renovation of the universe, the last judgment. (Variant: Avestan 'Frasho-kereti')

**Fravashi** (Avestan) See farohar.

**Frawardigan** (Pahlavi) The last ten days of the religious calendar, during which the farohars of the departed are remembered, a.k.a. All-Souls days, Mukhtad. (Originally 'rozan Frawardigan'.)

**Frawardin** Name of the nineteenth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; name of the first month.

**Gah** (Pahlavi, Persian) One of the five watches or periods of the day (named 'ushahin', 'hawan', 'rapithwin', 'uzerin', and 'aiwisruthrem'); also 'place' or 'area'. (Variant: 'geh')

**Gahambar** (Pahlavi, Persian) Six major seasonal festivals, named 'maidyozaem' (mid-spring - celebration of the creation of the sky and the harvest of winter crops), 'maidyoshahem' (mid-summer - relating to the creation of the waters.), 'paitishahem' (bringing in the corn), 'ayathrem' (homecoming of cattle), 'maidyarem' (mid-winter), and 'hamaspathmaidem' (coming of the whole group of farohars). (Variant 'gahanbar' involving rituals, prayers and sharing of food.)

**Gaokerena** Mythical cosmic tree.

**Garothman** (Parsi Gujarati) The 'House of Song', i.e. heaven. (Variant:

Avestan 'Garo-nmana', Pahlavi 'garodman')

**Gatha** (Avestan) The five sacred hymns of Zarathushtra (Yasna chapters 28-34, 43-51, 53), part of the Avesta; the five supplementary days at the end of the Zoroastrian religious calendar and the fireshtes presiding over them.

**Gaw** (Pahlavi, Persian) Name of a yazad personifying cattle; an ox, bull or cow.

**Gayomard** (Pahlavi) Literally 'mortal life', mythical first man according to some Pahlavi texts. (Variant: Avestan 'Gayo-maretan')

**Geh-sarnu** (Parsi Gujarati) Recitation of the Gathas during a funeral service. (Variant: Pahlavi 'geh-sarna, gahan-srayishn')

**Gehân** An iron bier on which a dead body is removed

**Getig** (Pahlavi) Material existence; the world. (Compare with 'menog'.)

**Getig-kharid** (Persian) A ceremony of redemption, consisting of the recital of nine Yasna services.

**Gewra** Ceremony which qualifies priests to initiate as candidate into the priesthood. It consists of performing the Yasna ritual for six consecutive days. (variant Gewrâ)

**Giriban** (Persian) A small pocket on the throat of the sudre (sacred shirt), also known as "kissa-e kerfa" (the bag of good deeds) (Persian).

**God** See Ahura Mazda.

**Godavara** (Gujarati) One of the Gujarat groups of priests, serving a large rural area, headquartered in Anklesar.

**Gomez** (Pahlavi) (unconsecrated) Bull's urine.

**Goshorun** Literally 'the soul of the cow (or settlement)'; name of the fourteenth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; (Avestan Geush Urvan)

**Gowad** See Wad.

**Hamaspathmaidem** (Avestan) Literally 'coming of the whole group [of farohars]', feast of All Souls. (Variant Hamaspathmaedaya)

**Hamazor** (Pahlavi) A ritual greeting.

**Hamistagan** (Pahlavi) Purgatory, a neutral place between heaven and hell where souls go when their good deeds equal their evil deeds. (Variant: 'Hameshta-gehan')

**Hamkar** (Pahlavi) Literally 'co-workers', associates of the yazad which presides over the day. The term 'dahman' is also used.

**Haoma** (Avestan) Name of a plant with medicinal and spiritual properties; name of the yazad presiding over the haoma plant. (Variant: Pahlavi 'hom').

**Hara:** Mythical mountain. (Variant: 'Hukairya')

**Hathra** A measure equal to one-half of a charetu, or about 3.5 furlongs.

**Haurvatat** (Avestan) See Hordad.

**Hawan** (Pahlavi) Name of the second watch (gah) of each day (sunrise to midday, i.e., 12 noon); a yazad presiding over the second watch. (Variant 'havan', Avestan 'havani')

**Herbad:** See ervad.

**Hom** (Pahlavi) See haoma.

**Hooshang** (Persian) A mythological ruler of ancient Iran, founder of the Peshdadian dynasty, He is credited with the discovery of fire. (Variant. 'Hushang', Avestan 'Haoshanha')

**Hordad** (Pahlavi) Literally 'Perfection or Health', name of an Amahraspand;

name of the sixth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; name of the third month. (Variant: Avestan 'Haurvatat')

**Hormazd** (Persian) Name of various kings of the Parthian and Sasanian dynasties.

**Hoshedarmah** One of the future Soshyants.

**Hukairya**: See Hara.

**Ilm-i Khshnoom** An occult movement within Zoroastrianism.

**Indar** Name of a demon. (Variant: Sanskrit 'Indra')

**Iranshah** (Persian) The oldest sacred fire (Atash Bahram) in India, now in Udvada.

**Jamasp** (Pahlavi) An early hero of the Zoroastrian religion. He was King Vishtasp's Prime Minister, and the son-in-law of Zarathushtra. (Variant: Avestan 'Jamasp')

**Jamshed** (Persian) A famous king of ancient Iran. (Variant: 'Jamshid', Avestan 'Yima Khshaeta')

**Jashan** (Pahlavi Persian) A frequently-performed religious service, in which an afrinagan ceremony is performed. (Variant: 'jashn', Parsi 'jasan').

**Jizya** Poll tax levied from non-Muslims.

**Kabiseh** Intercalulation done to keep calendar consistent with seasons

**Kaplo** (kâplô) A knife with metallic handle, used for cutting purposes.

**Karb** Priest of the old religion. (Variant: Avestan 'Karapan').

**Karapan** (Avestan) See karb.

**Kardah** A section or division of most Yashts and other books of the Avesta. Compare with fargard.

**Karsha** A furrow drawn on the ground to isolate impurities.

**Karshwar** (Pah.) One of the seven continents of the earth, named 'Arezahi' (West), 'Sawahi' (East), 'Fradadhafshu' (Southeast), 'Widadhafshu' (Southwest), 'Wouru-bareshti' (northwest), 'Wourujareshti' (Northeast), and 'Xwaniratha' (central). Eranvej is located in the latter.

**Kay** See Kayanian.

**Kayanian** A prehistoric dynasty of ancient Iran. (Variant: 'kay, kayag, kavi', Avestan 'kavaya')

**Kay Kaus** (Pahlavi) A Kayanian king. (Variant: Avestan 'Kavi Usan')

**Kay Khosraw** (Persian) A Kayanian king, grandson of Kay Kaus. (Variant: Avestan 'Kavi Haosravah')

**Kay Kobad** (Persian) Founder of the Kayanian dynasty. (Variant: Avestan 'Kavi Kavata.')

**Kay Vishtasp** (Pahlavi) King of ancient Iran, patron of Zarathushtra. (Variant: Avestan 'Vishtaspa', Persian 'Gushtasp')

**Kem na mazda** (Avestan) An exorcism prayer from the Avesta.

**Kersasp** (Pahlavi) A king of ancient Iran. (Variant: 'Garshasp', Avestan 'Keresaspa')

**Khambata** (Gujarati) A group of priests, headquartered in Khambat.

**Kheshm** (Pahlavi, Persian) The a demon of wrath.

**Khorda Avesta** (Persian) The 'Small Avesta', a prayer book with excerpts from the Avesta.

**Khordad-sal** (Persian) The sixth day of the year.

**Khorshed** (Parsi Persian) See Khwarshed.

**Khshathra** Vairyra (Avestan) See Shahrewar.

**Khshnuman** (Pahlavi) Literally 'dedication', a dedicatory section (in Avesta) naming the yazad in whose honour a ceremony is performed. There are two types of khshnumans, nani ("shorter"), and wadi ("longer").

**Khwarrah** (Pahlavi) Divine grace or glory. (Variant: Pahlavi 'farrah', Avestan 'khvarenah', 'khwarenah').

**Khwarshed** 'The shining sun'; name of the yazad presiding over the Sun; name of the eleventh day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; (Variant: Persian: Khurshid)

**Khwetodas** (Pahlavi) Next-of-kin marriage. (Variant: Avestan 'khvaetvadatha')

**Kriya** (Sanskrit) Ritual action.

**Kusti** (Persian) Sacred cord worn around the waist by Zoroastrians; the short ritual of untying and retying the kusti.

**Libation** Offering to waters

**Lohrasp** (Pahlavi) A king of ancient Iran, father of Kay Vishtasp. (Variant: Avestan "Aurvāt-aspa")

**Maga** A pit, dug during the barashnom ritual.

**Magus** A priest (pl. magi). Compare with "mobed".

**Mah** (Pahlavi, Persian) Moon; month; name of the twelfth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; name of the yazad presiding over the Moon.

**Mahraspand** Literally 'Holy Word', name of a yazad who embodies the Holy Word; name of the twenty-ninth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar. (Variant: Avestan 'Manthra Spenta')

**Maidyarem** Mid-winter feast (gahambar).

**Maidyoshahem** Mid-summer feast (gahambar).

**Maidyozarem** Mid-spring feast (gahambar).

**Mani** (Pahlavi, Persian) Founder of Manichaeism, a Gnostic religion with Zoroastrian elements, considered an arch-heretic (lived from 216 CE- 275 CE)

**Manthra** (Avestan) Holy Word; specific passages of the Avesta with specific poetic and spiritual properties. Compare with Mahraspand.

**Maratab** (Arabic) A ceremony which qualifies a priest to perform higher rituals. Compare with nawar. (Variant. 'martab')

**Margarzan** (Pahlavi) Mortal sin.

**Mashye-Mashyane** (Pahlavi) The first human couple, sprung from the seed of Gayomard, the first man.

**Mazda** (Avestan) See Ahura Mazda.

**Mazdayasni** (Avestan) Another term for the Zoroastrian religion, literally "worship of Mazda".

**Menog** (Pahlavi) Spiritual existence; spiritual world. (Compare with getig.) (Variant: Avestan 'mainyu')

**Mihr** (Pahlavi, Persian) Yazad presiding over the contract; name of the sixteenth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; name of the seventh month.

**Mihragan** (Pahlavi) A festival honouring the yazad Mihr, celebrated on the



16th day of the seventh month.

**Minocheher** (Persian) A king of ancient Iran. (Variant: 'Manuchihr', Avestan 'Manuschithra')

**Mobed** (Persian) A Zoroastrian priest, orig. head priest ('Magu-paiti', master of Magi).

**Mukhtad** (Persian?) See Frawardigan.

**Myazd** (Pahlavi) A ceremonial food offering.

**Nahn** Ablution, a ritual washing of the entire body, a higher form of purification than padyab.

**Nama karana** Ceremony for naming a newborn, usually 10-12 days after birth

**Namaskar** (Gujarati) A short prayer of homage. (Variant: 'nemaskar')

**Nam Stayishn** (Pahlavi) Name of a Pazand prayer praising Ohrmazd, part of the Khorda Avesta.

**Naogar** (naôgar) A stick with nine knots, used in purifying ceremonies.

**Nasa** (Persian) Dead matter, pollution; demon of putrefaction. (Variant: Avestan 'nasu', Pahlavi 'nasush')

**Nask** (Pahlavi) Literally 'book, volume,' one of the 21 volumes into which the Avesta was divided in ancient times; a religious service

**Navjote** (Parsi Gujarati) Initiation into the Zoroastrian religion, a ceremony of investiture of the sudre and kustî. Also called 'sedra pushun'.

**Navsari** (Persian, Gujarati) A town in Gujarat India, a stronghold of Zoroastrianism.

**Nawar** (Pahlavi) A four day ceremony which qualifies a candidate for the priesthood. Compare with maratab,

**Nawruz** (Persian) New Years Day. (Variant: 'Noruz', 'No Roz')

**Neryosang** (Pahlavi, Persian): name of a yazad. (Avestan 'nairyosangha')

**Nirang** (Pahlavi) Literally 'formula, spell', a short ritual accompanied by Avestan or Pazand prayers; consecrated gomez.

**Nirang-i kustî bastan** (Persian) Formula for retying the kustî, this short ritual is a necessary prelude to longer prayer.

**Nirangdin** (Pahlavi) Name of the most exalted and elaborate of Zoroastrian high liturgies.

**Niyayesh** (Persian) One of five Zoroastrian litanies from the Avesta, part of the daily prayers. (Variant: 'nyayesh, nyayishn')

**Nyayesh** See niyayesh.

**Ohrmazd** (Pahlavi) God, the supreme being; name of the first day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar. (Variant: Ormazd, Avestan 'Ahura Mazda')

**Old Persian** Language of the Achaemenian Empire, recorded in cuneiform inscriptions.

**Osta** Literally 'disciple', a candidate for priesthood. (Avestan 'havishta')

**Osti** A woman of priestly family.

**Padan** (Persian) A white cloth mask used by a priest during ceremonies to keep his breath from directly touching the fire.

**Padyab** (Persian) A ritual washing of the exposed parts of the body. Compare with nahn.

**Padyab-kustî** (Persian) A ritual ablution followed by the ritual untying and

retying of the kustī.

**Pahlavi** The Middle Persian language, used between 300 B.C.E. and 950 C.E., in which many Zoroastrian writings are preserved.

**Pairika** (Avestan) Witch, sorceress; shooting star.

**Paitishahem** Feast (gahambar) of bringing in the harvest.

**Panchayat** Local association of Zoroastrians.

**Palash** (Parsi Persian) A Parthian king (51-80 C.E.). (Variant. Greek 'Vologeses I', Pahlavi 'Walakhsh')

**Panj tay** (Persian) A ceremony performed with a 'five-wire' barsom, which is prerequisite for performing any high liturgy for the day. (Variant: 'baj of panch tai')

**Panthak** (Gujarati) Priestly jurisdiction.

**Paistryo-kaesha** (Avestan) Literally 'primitive doctrine', forerunner of Zoroastrianism. Alternately, one of the first teachers of the Zoroastrianism. (Variant: Pahlavi 'poryotkesh')

**Parsis** Zoroastrians who settled in India. Sg: Parsi. (Variant: 'Parsees')

**Paitishahem Gahambar** Festival commemorating the creation of the earth and the harvesting of summer crops.

**Parthian** A royal dynasty ruling Iran from 250 B.C.E.- 226 C.E.

**Patet** (Pahlavi) Prayer of penance (in Pazand).

**Pavi** (pâvi) Literally "sacred" or consecrated. A permanently constructed ritual furrow (karsha, qv). The platform of the dakhma is divided into separate sections names pavis.

**Paywand** (Pahlavi) (paewand, paiwand) Literally 'connection,' ritual contact between persons serving as a shield against pollution. A ritual connection. "To hold a "paywand" means to be in close contact or touch. This is done by holding a piece of cloth or cotton tape by two persons to show that they are associated or joined in doing a thing." (Modi, funeral)

**Pazand** (Pahlavi) Pahlavi texts in which Aramaic elements are replaced with their Iranian equivalents, transcribed in the Avestan script.

**Peshdadian**: The first dynasty of ancient Iran.

**Peshotan** (Persian) An early hero of Zoroastrianism, he was the son of Kay Vishtasp.

**Pesho-tanu** (Avestan) A 'mortal-sin'; an individual who has committed a mortal sin.

**Porseh Ceremony** Memorial Service

**Pourushasp** (Pahlavi) Name of Zarathushtra's father. (Variant: Avestan 'Paourushaspa')

**Qadimi** (Persian, Arabic) One of the three movements within Zoroastrianism which observe different religious calendars (the other two are called Fasli and Shahanshahi). The Qadimi calendar is one month ahead of the Shahanshahi.

**Ram** Literally 'joy', name of a yazad; name of the twenty-first day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar.

**Rapithwin** (Avestan) The period of the day (gah) from noon to mid-afternoon; a yazad presiding over the Rapithwin gah. During five months of the year it is replaced by a second Hawan.

**Rashn** (Pahlavi) Literally 'truth, justice', name of a yazad; name of the eighteenth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar;

(Avestan Rashnu).

**Rashnu** (Avestan) See Rashn.

**Raspi** (Persian) Assistant priest.

**Ratu** (Avestan) Judge, often found in conjunction with 'Ahu'. (Variant: Pahlavi 'rad')

**Rawan** (Pahlavi) Soul. (Variant: Avestan 'urvan')

**Riman** (Pahlavi, Persian) Something that has become polluted by contact with dead matter; a ceremony of purification, used by Parsees in place of barashnom to purify lay persons.

**Rivayat** (Arabic) A collection of letters in Persian from Iranian priests in response to questions by their Indian counterparts on a variety of religious topics, written between 1478 and 1773 C.E.

**Rustam** (Persian) A hero of ancient Iran.

**Sada** (Persian) Literally 'pure, simple,' Avestan texts without Pahlavi commentaries.

**Sadeh** (Jashan-e Sadeh) Mid winter celebration in which a bonfire is often used to express defiance of the cold of winter.

**Sagdid** (Pahlavi) Literally 'a dog's gaze', this term refers to the practice of exposing a corpse to the gaze of a dog, which is believed to drive away some of the power of the druj.

**Sagri** (Gujarati) A small building near a dakhma where a fire is kept burning.

**Sanjana** (Gujarati) A group of priests headquartered in Udvarda.

**Saoshyant** (Avestan) See Soshyant.

**Sasanian** The Zoroastrian dynasty which ruled Iran from circa 226 C.E.-651 C.E. (Variant: 'Sasanid')

**Satum** Meal offering ritual prayer for dead.

**Second Hawan** The third watch (gah) of each day (noonday to 3 p.m.) during part of the year. Compare with Rapithwin.

**Sedra-pushun** See navjote.

**Shahanshahi** (Persian) One of the three movements within Zoroastrianism which observe different religious calendars (the other two are called Fasli and Qadimi.)

**Shahrewar** (Pahlavi) Literally 'Desirable Dominion', the Amahraspand presiding over metals; name of the fourth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; name of the sixth month. (Variant: Avestan 'Khshathra Vairya')

**Shah-nama** Book of Kings

**Sijda** A bow of last respects.

**Siroza, siruza** (Persian) Literally '30 days', a prayer from the Avesta which honours 30 yazads.

**Soshyant** (Pahlavi) The (World) Saviour. (Variant: Avestan 'Saoshyant')

**Spandarmad** (Pahlavi) Literally 'Holy Devotion', the Amahraspand presiding over the earth; name of the fifth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; name of the twelfth month. (Variant: Avestan 'Spenta Armaiti')

**Spenta** (Avestan) Holy, beneficent.

**Spenta Armaiti** (Avestan) See Spandarmad.

**Spenta Mainyu** (Avestan) Holy Spirit. (Variant: Pahlavi 'Spenamino')

**Spentomad** Name of the third Gatha; name of the third Gatha day.

**Spozgar** (Pazand) Demon of thunderstorms.

**Srosh** (Pahlavi) Literally 'Hearkening'; name of a yazad; name of the seventeenth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; a spirit being who guards the soul for three days after death (Variant: Avestan 'Sraosha')

**Stum** (Parsi Gujarati) A prayer recited on meals in honour of the dead. (Variant: 'satum')

**Sudre** (Persian) Sacred shirt. (Variant: 'sudra, sudreh')

**Sudre-kusti** (Persian) Sacred shirt and girdle.

**Syamak** (Pahlavi) A hero of ancient Iran, son of Gayomard, the first king of Iran. (Variant: 'Siyamak')

**Syaw** (Parsi Gujarati) A suit of white clothes consecrated during the Dron service. (Variant: 'siav, shiav')

**Syawakhsh** (Pahlavi) Name of an ancient Iranian hero, son of Kay Kaus.

**Tahmurasp** (Persian) Name of an ancient Iranian hero, son of Hooshang.

**Tana** The ceremony of laying the foundation for a new Dakhma.

**Tanapuhr** (Pahlavi) A mortal sin, or a good deed which can balance a mortal sin.

**Tan-dorosti** (Pazand, Persian) A prayer of benediction (in Pazand).

**Tâvize** (Pahlavi) Amulet.

**Tir** (Pahlavi) see Tishtar.

**Tiragan** Religious celebration in honour of Tishtar.

**Tishn** (Pahlavi) Demon of thirst.

**Tishtar** (Pahlavi) The star Sirius; name of the yazad presiding over Sirius; name of the thirteenth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar; name of the fourth month. (Variant: Pahlavi 'Tir')

**Tur** (Persian) Name of an ancient Iranian hero, one of the three sons of Faridoon.

**Tura, Turanian** A foreign tribe mentioned in the Avesta, probably originally Scythian, later applied to all Central Asian nomads.

**Urvan** Soul.

**Ushahin** Name of the first watch (gah) of each day (from midnight to daybreak).

**Ushtawad** Name of the second Gatha; name of the second Gatha day.

**Uthamnu** (Gujarati) A communal service performed on the third night after death. (Variant: 'Uthamna')

**Uzerin** The fourth watch (gah) of each day (from 3 p.m. to sunset).

**Vanant** (Avestan) Yazad of the Star Vega.

**Vendidad** (Persian) One of the books of the Avesta; a high liturgical service in which the Vendidad is recited.

**Vishtasp** (Pahlavi) See Kay Vishtasp.

**Vispa Humata** (Avestan) A short prayer from the Khorda Avesta focussing on good thoughts, words, and deeds.

**Visperad** (Pahlavi, Persian) One of the books of the Avesta; a high liturgical service dedicated to Ahura Mazda.

**Vohuman** (Pahlavi) Literally 'Good Mind', one of the Amahraspands; name of the second day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar;

name of the 11th month. (Variant. Avestan 'Vohu Manah')

**Vohu Manah** (Avestan) See Vohuman.

**Vourukasha** (Avestan) Literally 'of many bays', mythical ocean.

**Wad** Literally 'wind, atmosphere', name of the yazad presiding over the wind; name of the twenty-second day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar. (Variant. Gowad, Govad).

**Wahisht** (Pahlavi) Paradise.

**Wahishtoisht** Name of the fifth Gatha; name of the fifth Gatha day.

**Warasyo** (Parsi Gujarati) A consecrated white bull. Its hair is used for ritual purposes. (Variant: 'varasyo', Avestan 'varesa')

**Warharan** Literally 'victory', name of a yazad; name of the twentieth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar. (Variant: Persian Bahram, Behram.)

**Wohukhshathra** Name of the fourth Gatha; name of the fourth Gatha day.

**Yasht** (Pahlavi) One of the hymns of the Avesta honouring various spiritual beings.

**Yasna** (Avestan) One of the books of the Avesta; the name of a high liturgical service in which the text of the Yasna is recited. (variant Yaçna, yazashna). It culminates in the Ab-Zohr, the "offering to waters".

**Yatha ahu vairyo** (Avestan) The first phrase of the Ahunwar prayer. (variant Ahunvar)

**Yazad** (Pahlavi) A created spiritual being, worthy of being honoured or praised. Used interchangeably with fireshte. (Variant: Ijad, Avestan 'Yazata'); angel

**Yazdegird** (Pahlavi) The last Sasanian king. The Zoroastrian calendars numbers the year based on his reign, and uses the label 'A.Y.' for 'after Yazdegird'.

**Yenghe hatam** (Avestan) One of the most sacred prayers of Zoroastrianism.

**Yima** (Avestan) See Jamshed.

**Yozdathregar** (Avestan) Literally 'purifier', the priest who administers the barashnom ceremony of purification. (Variant: Avestan 'yaozdathregar')

**Zam** Literally 'earth', yazad presiding over the earth; name of the twenty-eighth day of the month according to the Zoroastrian religious calendar. (Variant 'Zamyad')

**Zand** Translation and exegesis. The term 'Zand-Avesta' or 'Zend-Avesta' refers to an edition of the Avesta which has Zand interspersed with the Avesta text. (Variant Zend.)

**Zaothra** Libation (Variant: Pahlavi 'zohr')

**Zarathushtra** (Avestan) Name of the founder of Zoroastrianism. (Variant: Parsi Gujarati '**Zarthosht**', Pahlavi 'Zartosht, Zardusht', Greek 'Zoroaster')

**Zarthosht** (Parsi Gujarati) See Zarathushtra.

**Zend-Avesta** See Zand.

**Zinda-rawan** (Persian) Literally 'living soul' (as distinguished from anosharawan, the soul of a deceased person); a ceremony honouring the yazad Srosh on behalf of a living person. (Variant, 'Zenda-ravan')

**Zohak** (Persian) A mythical tyrant. (Variant 'Zahhak', Avestan 'Azi Dahaka')

**Zoroaster** (Greek) See Zarathushtra.

**Zoroastrianism** The religion founded by Zarathushtra (12th century B.C.E.?), the oldest of the great prophetic religions.  
**Zot** (Pahlavi) Officiating priest.